目录 CONTENTS



全书考点索引 …… I

Unit 1 Asia

学习方法创新 …… 1
学习目标梳理 …… 1
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 2
Period 2 Reading …… 7
Period 3 Grammar …… 15
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 22
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 28
素养：培养“服务他人”素养 …… 20

二维码索引

词汇表听写 …… 1
课时导入 …… 2,7
课文朗读 …… 2,3,7,23
课文听力 …… 22
知识微课：across …… 18
it 的用法 …… 20
拓展阅读 …… 7
方法真题练：固定短语法 …… 13

Unit 2 Great people

学习方法创新 …… 32
学习目标梳理 …… 32
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 33
Period 2 Reading …… 37
Period 3 Grammar …… 44
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 52
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 57
素养：培养发明意识 …… 35
培养“行动”素养 …… 40
培养“自我控制”素养 …… 41
了解中外婚礼文化的不同 …… 55
Project 1 …… 62

词汇表听写 …… 32
课时导入 …… 33,37
课文朗读 …… 33,37,53
课文听力 …… 53
知识微课：invent 与 discover …… 34
时态标志词 …… 49
拓展阅读 …… 37
方法真题练：语法判定法 …… 35

Unit 3 Robots

学习方法创新 …… 64
学习目标梳理 …… 64
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 65
Period 2 Reading …… 68
Period 3 Grammar …… 75
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 80
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 84
素养：培养“跨文化”素养 …… 83

词汇表听写 …… 64
课时导入 …… 65,68
课文朗读 …… 65,68,81,85
课文听力 …… 80
知识微课：whatever …… 66
lie 与 lay …… 72
简单、并列、复合句 …… 78
拓展阅读 …… 68
方法真题练：辨析法 …… 67

教辅资料站
电子教辅 试卷练习
知识总结 备课资源
扫码关注获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 Life on Mars

学习方法创新 …… 89
学习目标梳理 …… 89
Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit …… 90
Period 2 Reading …… 93
Period 3 Grammar …… 100
Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills …… 106
Period 5 Task & Self-assessment …… 112
素养:培养“挑战自我”素养 …… 110
Project 2 …… 117

词汇表听写 …… 89
课时导入 …… 90,93
课文朗读 …… 90,93,107
课文听力 …… 106
知识微课:compare …… 98
prefer …… 114
拓展阅读 …… 93
方法真题练:句意理解法 …… 97

活页部分

Unit 1 过关测试 …… 119
Unit 2 过关测试 …… 123
Unit 3 过关测试 …… 127
Unit 4 过关测试 …… 131
参考答案及点拨 …… 135
教材习题参考答案 …… 155

荣德基
微信公众号
教辅资料站
关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

全书考点索引

◆单词(按字母顺序排列)

across …… 18
advantage …… 59
agreement …… 103
allow …… 42
another …… 24
begin …… 40
choose …… 40
chopsticks …… 4
circle …… 103
compare …… 98
complete …… 72
consider …… 77
development …… 60
discovery …… 55
eastern …… 13
either …… 18
European …… 36
expect …… 86
explain …… 66
fighter …… 36
further …… 42
hang …… 11
harm …… 110
hold …… 83
include …… 17
increase …… 59
instead …… 114
inventor …… 34
join …… 39
land …… 42
lay …… 72
lie …… 11
low …… 102
manage …… 40
mess …… 72
medicine …… 77
middle …… 9
million …… 26
miss …… 109
need …… 71
never …… 34
one …… 67
on …… 25
order …… 41
paper …… 73
pay …… 12
point …… 12
polluted …… 96
population …… 29
possibility …… 103
post …… 66
practise …… 48
prefer …… 114
pride …… 42
properly …… 72

荣德基
微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

provide ····· 19
push for ····· 55
put out ····· 66
raising ····· 10
rapid ····· 96
receive ····· 39
regret ····· 87
risk ····· 110
satisfy ····· 71
seldom ····· 47
service ····· 20
shape ····· 11
similar ····· 104
since ····· 5
smoothly ····· 71
store ····· 73
specially ····· 98
spread ····· 73
stay ····· 25
step ····· 4
stranger ····· 104
tasty ····· 97
test ····· 40
that ····· 103
through ····· 83
tiring ····· 3
turn on ····· 48
uncomfortable ····· 97
underground ····· 11
unsure ····· 77
whatever ····· 66
while ····· 18
widely ····· 56
win ····· 48
wonder ····· 11
表示方位介词的 in、to 和 on 的用法 ····· 26
名词所有格 ····· 35

◆短语（按字母顺序排列）

after all ····· 111
all over again ····· 96
at most ····· 86
at present ····· 59
arrive in ····· 19
at the speed of… ····· 97
because of ····· 11
be famous for ····· 13
both… and… ····· 27
by hand ····· 49
carried out ····· 109
cut … short ····· 41
do with ····· 73
feel like ····· 113
first of all ····· 86
get married ····· 55
go bad ····· 48
had better ····· 4
happen to ····· 58
has been to ····· 12
hear of ····· 34
in the form of ····· 97
keep doing sth. ····· 4
large numbers of ····· 96

荣德基
微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

leave for …… 19
look forward to …… 87
no longer …… 72
on time …… 83
out of control …… 41
South African …… 36
take up …… 17
three quarters …… 18
together with …… 41
up to standard …… 87
used to …… 10
work on …… 47

◆句型(按字母顺序排列)

How do you like …? …… 91
I hope so. …… 92
Me neither. …… 91
Thank you for… …… 5
There's a long way to go. …… 4
what is wrong with … …… 87
Why don't you …? …… 5
反意疑问句 …… 3

◆辨析(按本书页码排列)

辨析:tiring 与 tired …… 3
辨析:keep doing sth. 与 keep on doing sth. …… 4
辨析:raise 与 rise …… 10
辨析:because of 与 because …… 11
辨析:point at 与 point to …… 12
辨析:spend, cost, pay 与 take …… 12
辨析:have/has been to, have/has gone to 与 have/has been in …… 12
辨析:be famous/known for 与 be famous/known as …… 13
辨析:across, through 与 over …… 18
辨析:arrive, reach 与 get …… 19
辨析:provide 与 offer …… 19
辨析:another, other, the other, others 与 the others …… 24
辨析:on, in 与 at …… 25
辨析:in, on 与 to …… 26
辨析:discover, create, invent 与 find …… 34
辨析:receive 与 accept …… 39
辨析:join in, take part in 与 attend …… 39
辨析:win 与 beat …… 48
辨析:wide 与 widely …… 56
辨析:take place 与 happen …… 58
辨析:increase by 与 increase to …… 59
辨析:increase 与 add …… 59
辨析:one, it 与 that …… 67
辨析:order 与 book …… 71
辨析:lie, lay 与 lie …… 72
辨析:a number of 与 the number of …… 97
辨析:especially 与 specially …… 98
辨析:after all, above all, first of all 与 in all …… 111
辨析:instead 与 instead of …… 114

荣德基
微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Asia

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	⚠引人入胜法(9 页)
写作方法	①“特征图法”写“我最喜爱的国家”(30 页)
解题方法	1语境法(135,146 页) 2分析句子结构法(11 页) 3联系上下文法(136 页) 4辨析法(4,17,18,25,145,147 页) 5题眼法(20,27,144,147 页) 6固定句型法(20,145 页) 7固定短语法(13,145 页) 8语法判定法(3,145,146,147 页) 9情景交际法(5,144 页) 10逻辑推理法(10,12,26,146 页) 11排除法(19,146,147 页) 12固定结构法(4,19,144,145 页) 13常识法(26,146 页)

☞温馨提示:括号内的数字表示该方法在本书中对应的页码。

学习目标梳理

单元话题	亚洲		
	课时	单词	短语
必背词汇	Period 1: Comic strip & Welcome to the unit	tiring *adj.* 使人疲劳的,累人的 step *n.* 台阶;梯级 chopsticks *n.* (复)筷子	take a rest 休息 had better (not) do sth. 最好(不)干某事 keep doing sth. 继续干某事 go on 继续 on one's way back 在某人回来的路上
	Period 2: Reading	middle *n.* & *adj.* 中间(的),中央(的) raising *n.* 升高 flag *n.* 旗帜 wonder *n.* 奇迹 lie *vi.* 位于 shape *n.* 形状,外形 underground *adj.* 地下的 hang *vi.* & *vt.* 垂下;悬挂 point *vi.* 指,指向 eastern *adj.* 东部的,东方的 south-east *n.*, *adj.* & *adv.* 东南方	in the middle of 在……的中央 used to 过去常常 turn ...into ... 把……变成…… because of 由于 have/has been to 到过 be famous for 以……著名
	Period 3: Grammar	quarter *n.* 四分之一 either *det.* & *pron.* 两者之一 level *n.* 水平 service *n.* 服务;工作	take up 占据 be different from 与……不同 be worth doing 值得做 as ...as ...和……一样……
	Period 4: Integrated skills & Study skills	Japanese *adj.* 日本(人)的 state *n.* 国家;州	a trip to ... 到……的旅行 both ...and ... 两者都 for example 例如

本德基
微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

必背词汇	Period 5: Task & Self-assessment	population *n.* 人口 IT *abbr.* 信息技术 technology *n.* 技术 fair *n.* 集市,庙会,展览会 Indian *adj.* 印度(人)的	South Asia 南亚 communicate with sb. 与某人交流
句型	①反意疑问句 ②It's + *adj.* + to do sth. 做某事是…… ③...had better do sth. ……最好做某事。 ④with + 宾语 + 宾语补足语（with 作伴随状语） ⑤...is one of the + 复数名词. ……是……的其中之一。		
语法	代词 it 的用法		

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

I. 课文原文及译文

课文朗读 Comic strip

Comic strip

1. **Hobo: Wow, the Great Wall is amazing, isn't it**[1]?
2. **Eddie:** No, it isn't. It's **tiring**[2] to climb the **steps**[3], and my feet hurt. I'm taking a rest.
3. **Hobo:** No, Eddie! **There's** still **a long way to go**[4]. **We'd better**[5] **keep moving**[6].
4. **Eddie:** I don't want to go on, Hobo. Wake me up on your way back.

Countries in Asia

Some British exchange students are coming to visit Beijing and other places in Asia. The Class 1, Grade 9 students want to help them learn more about Asia.

Task

Write an introduction to an Asian country for the exchange students.

Chinese things and places

A **The British exchange students have arrived in Beijing. Millie is showing them some pictures of Chinese things. Help her write the correct name under each picture.**

Chinese knot	Chinese opera	Chinese paper-cutting
chopsticks[7]	dragon dance	kung fu

B **Kevin, a British exchange student, is asking Millie for suggestions on his travel plan. Work in pairs and give your own ideas about it. Use the conversation below as a model.**

漫 画

1. 霍波：哇，长城真壮观啊，不是吗？
2. 埃迪：不，才不是呢。爬台阶真累人，我的脚都磨疼了。我要休息一下。
3. 霍波：不行，埃迪！还有很长一段路要走。我们最好继续前进。
4. 埃迪：我不想再爬了，霍波。在你回来的路上叫醒我。

亚洲的国家

一些英国交换生将要来参观北京和亚洲的其他地方。九年级一班的学生们想帮助他们更多地了解亚洲。

任务

为这些交换生写一篇关于一个亚洲国家的介绍。

中国的东西和地方

A 英国交换生们已到北京。米莉正在给他们看一些中国东西的图片。帮助她在每幅图片下面写上正确的名称。

中国结	中国戏剧	中国剪纸
筷子	舞龙	功夫

B 凯文，一名英国交换生，在向米莉寻求关于他的旅游计划的建议。结对练习，并给出你自己的观点。用下面的对话作为示例。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Kevin: I'm planning to travel around China. Where shall I visit first, Millie?

Millie: **Since**[8] you're in Beijing now, **why don't you**[9] start from here? Tian'anmen Square, the Palace Museum and the Great Wall are wonderful places to go.

Kevin: Good idea. What special things can I see in Beijing?

Millie: Chinese opera is a kind of traditional Chinese art, and Beijing opera is one of the most popular. You can go and enjoy it.

Kevin: OK. **Thank you for**[10] your suggestions.

Millie: You're welcome.

课文朗读B

凯文：我计划环游中国。我应该先参观哪里呢，米莉？

米莉：既然你现在在北京，为什么不从这儿开始呢？天安门广场、故宫博物院和长城都是可以去的很好的地方。

凯文：好主意。在北京我能看到什么特别的东西？

米莉：中国戏剧是一种传统的中国艺术，京剧是最受欢迎的戏剧之一。你可以去欣赏一下。

凯文：好的。谢谢你的建议。

米莉：不用谢。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶反意疑问句

考向一：其构成是："前肯后否"或"前否后肯"。答句是："前 Yes 后肯"或"前 No 后否"。

eg：（呼和浩特中考）We have to finish the work now, **don't we**?
我们现在必须完成工作，不是吗？
（随州中考）—Your sister doesn't get up early, does she?
你姐姐起得不早，是吗？
—**Yes, she does.** But she gets up late on weekends.
不，她起得早。但她周末起得晚。

【考题在线1】 —He didn't go to school late yesterday, did he?
—_____, though it rained hard yesterday. （鄂州）
A. No, he didn't　　B. Yes, he didn't
C. Yes, he did　　D. No, he did

点拨：本题用语法判定法解题。考查反意疑问句。句意：——他昨天上学没迟到，对吗？——是，没有。尽管昨天雨下得很大。在回答反意疑问句时，根据事实来回答，就该小题来说，根据横线后的句子可判断出，他没有迟到。故选 A。

考向二：[易错点] 陈述部分用 no, nothing, nobody, never, few, seldom, hardly, rarely, little 等否定含义的词时，简略问句用肯定式。

eg：The little boy can **hardly** speak, can he?
那个小男孩几乎不会说话，是吧？

【考题在线2】 Your mother is very busy. She hardly does morning exercises, _____? （黔东南）
A. isn't she　　B. does she
C. doesn't she　　D. is she

点拨：句意：你妈妈非常忙，她几乎不怎么去晨练，是吗？反意疑问句的构成是"前肯后否"或"前否后肯"，hardly 本身含有否定意义，所以反意部分用肯定，又因前半部分有 does，所以选 B。

特色土方法

"反意疑问句的构成"速记口诀

反意问句三要点，前后谓语正相反；
短句 not 如出现，必须缩写是习惯；
最后一点应注意，短句主语代词填。

❷[高频] tiring /ˈtaɪərɪŋ/ *adj.* 使人疲劳的，累人的

eg：（镇江中考）How **tiring** it is to reach the top of the mountain after three hours' climbing!
三个小时的登山后到达山顶真累人！

考向：[难点] 辨析 tiring 与 tired：

tiring	主语一般是物，意为"使人疲劳的，累人的"
tired	主语一般是人，意为"感到疲劳的，累的"

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

速记小筏

一语辨异： Some people were tired of the tiring football match. 一些人对那场令人困倦的足球比赛感到厌倦。

归纳 类似的还有：
interesting 有趣的，interested 感兴趣的
surprising 令人吃惊的，surprised 惊讶的
worrying 令人担心的，worried 担心的
relaxing 令人放松的，relaxed 放松的
moving 令人感动的，moved 感动的
exciting 令人兴奋的，excited 激动的

【考题在线3】 The storybook is very _____. I'm very _____ in it. （铜仁）

A. interesting; interested
B. interested; interesting
C. interest; interested
D. interesting; interest

点拨： 本题用辨析法解题。考查形容词辨析。形容词 interesting 主语通常是物，interested 主语通常是人，常见短语 be interested in“对……感兴趣”。第一个空格的主语是物，应用 interesting；第二个空格的主语是人，应用 interested。

③step /step/ *n.* 台阶，梯级，步，步骤

考向：step 是可数名词。固定短语 step by step 意为“逐步地”。

eg: **Step by step** my father taught me how to play chess.
我父亲逐步教会了我如何下象棋。
It's only a few **steps** further.
再走几步就到了。

拓展 step 作动词，意为“走，踏”。

eg: You cannot **step** twice into the same river.
你不能两次踏入同一条河流。

④There's a long way to go. 有很长一段路要走。

考向：[易错点] 两种 There be 句型辨析：

There be + 物 + to do …（此句中的 to do 在句中作定语。）	**There are** still a lot of things **to do**. 还有许多事要做。
There be + 人或物 + doing …（此句中的 doing 表示正在发生的动作或持续的状态。）	**There are** a lot of students **singing** in the classroom. 有许多学生在教室里唱歌。

【考题在线4】 There are some people _____ soccer in the park. （重庆）

A. play　　B. plays
C. playing　　D. to play

⑤[高频] had better 最好

考向：had better 后接动词原形，构成 had better do sth.，意为“最好干某事”。其否定形式是：had better not do sth.，意为“最好不干某事”。

eg: （烟台中考）You look tired. You'**d better** stop to have a good rest.
你看起来累了。你最好停下来好好休息一下。

（乐山中考）You'**d better** not eat too much chocolate, or you'll get fat fast.
你最好不要吃太多巧克力，否则你会很快变胖。

【考题在线5】 用所给词的适当形式填空
We all know you are smart, but you'd better _____ (not show) off. （宿迁）

点拨： 本题用固定结构法解题。句意：我们都知道你聪明，但是你最好不要炫耀。had better not do sth. 为固定结构，意为“最好不做某事”。

⑥[高频] keep doing sth. 继续干某事

考向一：keep 后接动名词，意为“继续干某事”。

eg: （齐齐哈尔中考）He **kept exercising** so that he could be in good health.
他坚持锻炼以便能保持身体健康。

考向二：[辨析] keep doing sth. 与 keep on doing sth.：

keep doing sth.	表示某一连续不断的动作，或某一动作的持续状态。
keep on doing sth.	强调时间的间隔性和动作的反复性，及某人做某事的决心。

eg: He **kept standing** in the street.
他一直站在大街上。
She **kept on raising** her hand.
她反复举手（不是一直举着手）。

⑦chopsticks /ˈtʃɒpstɪks/ *n.* [复数] 筷子

eg: We Chinese use **chopsticks** to have dinner.
我们中国人使用筷子吃饭。

考向：[易错点] 表示几副筷子用…pair(s) of chopsticks。作主语时，谓语动词应该与 pair 保持一致。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

eg:This pair of **chopsticks** is new.
这副筷子是新的。

8[高频]**since**/sɪns/*conj. &prep.* 因为,既然,由于

考向一:since 表示原因。

eg:**Since** there is a little time left, let's play a game!
既然还有一点时间,咱们做游戏吧!

考向二:since 还可意为"自从……以来"。

eg:(滨州中考)I haven't heard from him **since** last January.
自从去年一月份以来,我还没有收到过他的来信。

【考题在线6】Our teachers have been with us for nearly three years _____ we came to junior high school. We should thank them for what they have done for us. (山西)

A. until B. before C. since

9[高频]**Why don't you ...?** 为什么不……?

考向:后接动词原形,相当于 Why not ...?,意为"为什么不……呢?",表示建议。

eg:(菏泽中考)—What a fine day! **Why not** go out for a picnic?
天气真好!为什么不出去野餐呢?
—Sounds cool. Let's go.
听起来酷极了。咱们去吧。

【考题在线7】—I'm really tired because I studied until midnight last night.
—_____ (贵港)

A. No problem.
B. Why don't you go to bed earlier tonight?
C. You're welcome.
D. You can study for a test by taking notes.

点拨:本题用情景交际法解题。考查情景交际。句意:——我真的很累,因为我昨天晚上学习到半夜。——_____。根据题干意思,别人感觉很累,应该给些建议使其缓解疲劳,故 B 选项"为什么今晚不早点睡呢?"符合交际要求。

10[高频]**Thank you for ...** 谢谢你……

考向一:相当于 Thanks for ...,后接名词或动名词,即:Thanks/Thank you for sth. 或 Thanks/Thank you for doing sth. 。

eg:(海南中考)—**Thanks for helping** me with my English.
谢谢你帮助我学英语。
—It's my pleasure. I'm glad you've made such great progress.
不用谢。你已经取得如此大的进步,我很高兴。

考向二:回答时用:That's all right. That's OK. Not at all. You're welcome. It's a pleasure. My pleasure. 或 Don't mention it. 表示"不用谢。"

eg:(内江中考)—**Thanks** a million **for** your help!
万分感谢你的帮助!
—**My pleasure**.
不客气。

【考题在线8】—I had a very good time at the charity show. Thanks for your invitation.
—_____. (盐城)

A. All right
B. You are welcome
C. Good luck to you
D. Not too bad

点拨:句意:我在慈善会上过得很愉快,谢谢你的邀请。All right 好的;You are welcome不客气;Good luck to you 祝你好运;Not too bad 不是很坏。回答感谢可用 You are welcome 不客气。故选 B。

考题在线答案

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. C
5. not show
6. C 7. B 8. B

未德基
微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见144页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示拼写单词

1. It is a long _____ (累人的) day.
2. Will you please give me some good _____ (建议)? I hope they can help me play the role better.
3. If you want to get to the top of the building, you should climb the _____(台阶).
4. We Chinese like to use _____ (筷子) when eating.
5. Try to get some _____ (休息) —you have a busy day tomorrow.

二、单项选择

6. Jack is really tall, _____? (重庆)

A. does he　　B. doesn't he
C. is he　　D. isn't he

7. —Simon, what do I need to take for the hiking?
—You'd better _____ more water than usual. It's hot today. (南京)

A. to take　　B. take
C. taking　　D. took

8. Look! There are some birds _____ in the sky. They are very beautiful. (宜宾)

A. to fly　　B. fly
C. flying　　D. flown

9. Li Na is one of _____ tennis players in the world. (益阳)

A. most famous　　B. the most famous
C. more famous

10. —John, thank you for driving me home.
—_____. See you tomorrow. (资阳)

A. That's right
B. I'm afraid not
C. You're welcome
D. It's a good idea

11. _____ the scientists have done lots of research on Mars, there is still much waiting to be discovered. (温州)

A. If　　B. Since
C. Unless　　D. Though

12. In the future, robots will do _____ jobs in place of people in order not to get us _____. (黄石)【导学号：28374000】

A. bored; bored
B. boring; boring
C. boring; bored
D. bored; boring

13. Boys and girls, _____ learning and have fun! (甘肃)

A. keep　　B. to keep
C. keeping　　D. kept

14. —We can invite Nick and Paul to Shanghai Disneyland with us.
—_____ I'll give them a call right now. (宿迁)

A. Why not?　　B. What for?
C. Of course not.　　D. Not at all.

15. —Would you mind my opening the window?
—_____. I've got a cold. (十堰)

A. Never mind
B. You'd better not
C. All right
D. With pleasure

三、翻译句子

16. 因为雨下得正大，你最好不要外出。

_____

17. 做最终决定前，为什么不听听别人的建议呢？

_____

_____

18. 这次旅行虽然累人，但是很愉快。

_____

19. 既然大家都来了，咱们就开始上课吧！

_____

_____

20. 继续刻苦学习，你就能取得进步。

_____

_____

莱德基 微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

A Two cities in China[1]

课文朗读A

Millie wants to help the exchange students learn more about different cities in China. She has found two articles written by two students. Here are the articles.

Welcome to Beijing!

I am Wei Ke from Beijing, the capital of China.

In the **middle**[2] of the ancient city of Beijing is the Palace Museum, also called the Forbidden City. The emperors of the Ming and Qing dynasties **used to**[3] live there. It was turned into a museum in 1925. With wonderful buildings and art treasures inside, it is well worth a visit.

Next to the Palace Museum is Tian'anmen Square, the biggest city square in the world. Many tourists like to gather there early in the morning to watch the **raising**[4] of the national flag.

In the north-west of Beijing is the Summer Palace, a large Chinese garden set in a natural landscape. It was once a nice place for the emperors to spend the summer.

Another famous attraction is the Great Wall. It runs for over 6,000 kilometres across northern China, with watchtowers every few hundred metres. The wall was first built more than 2,000 years ago. It is one of the **wonders**[5] of the world.

Come and visit my city!

All about Guilin

Hello. My name is Mei Fang. My home is in Guilin.

"East or west, Guilin landscape is best." Guilin is really a beautiful city in southern China. It **lies**[6] on the two sides of the Lijiang River. All around the city, mountains stand in different **shapes**[7]. Many visitors come and visit Guilin **because of**[8] its fantastic landscape.

In the north-west of the city is the Reed Flute Cave. In this **underground**[9] cave, it is amazing that there are so many rocks in unusual shapes—some **hang**[10] down, and others **point**[11] upwards. The cave is praised as the "Art Palace of Nature".

Tourists like to take a boat trip along the Lijiang River. It is great fun. It is also popular to hire a bicycle and ride around the countryside.

I hope you can visit my city one day!

A 中国的两座城市

米莉想帮助交换生们更多地了解中国不同的城市。她已经找到了由两名学生写的两篇文章。下面就是这两篇文章。

欢迎到北京来!

我是来自中国首都北京的魏可。

在北京古城的中心是故宫博物院,也叫紫禁城。明、清两朝皇帝过去就住在那里。1925 年它被改成了博物馆。它里面有宏伟的建筑物和艺术珍宝,非常值得一游。

紧挨着故宫博物院的是天安门广场。它是世界上最大的城市广场。许多游客喜欢一大早聚集在那里观看升国旗仪式。

在北京的西北方是颐和园,一个坐落在自然风景中的大型中式园林。它曾经是皇帝们避暑的好地方。

另一个著名的观光胜地是长城。它在中国北部地区绵延 6 000 多千米,每隔几百米设有瞭望塔。城墙是在 2 000多年前首次建造的。它是世界奇迹之一。

来参观我所在的城市吧!

关于桂林的一切

你好,我叫梅芳。我家在桂林。

"桂林山水甲天下。"桂林确实是中国南方一座美丽的城市。它位于漓江两岸。城市的四周矗立着许多不同形状的山。许多游客来参观桂林是因为它迷人的自然风光。

在这个城市的西北部是芦笛岩。在这个地下溶洞中,有如此多造型奇特的石头,有的向下悬垂,还有的向上伸展,真让人叹为观止。此洞被誉为"大自然的艺术宫殿"。

游客喜欢乘船沿漓江游玩。这是一大乐趣。租一辆自行车骑行环游乡间也很受欢迎。

我希望有一天你们能来参观我所在的城市!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B Learning more about China

B1 Millie does not know some of the words in the articles. Help her match the words on the left with the meanings on the right. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

1 emperor (line 6) _____
2 attraction (line 18) _____
3 wonder (line 21) _____
4 lie (line 27) _____
5 cave (line 34) _____
6 hire (line 40) _____

a **pay**[12] some money to use something for a short time
b the ruler of a country or several countries
c a large hole in the side of a hill or under the ground
d something that fills you with surprise
e an interesting place to go
f be in a place

B2 Kevin is asking Daniel about Beijing. Complete their conversation with the words in the box.

dynasties	gather	museum	palace
raising	summer	wonders	

Kevin: Have you ever visited the Palace Museum, Daniel?
Daniel: Yes, of course. It was a (1) _____ for two (2) _____. Twenty-four Chinese emperors once lived there.
Kevin: Can we go inside the Palace Museum?
Daniel: Certainly. It's now open to the public as a (3) _____.
Kevin: The Summer Palace was also a palace for the emperors in the past, wasn't it?
Daniel: Yes. It was a nice place for the emperors to spend the (4) _____.
Kevin: Have you ever seen the (5) _____ of the national flag, then?
Daniel: Yes, I have. A lot of tourists like to (6) _____ in Tian'anmen Square early in the morning to watch it.
Kevin: What about the Great Wall? Have you ever been there?
Daniel: Sure. As an old saying goes, "He who **has never been to**[13] the Great Wall is not a true man." It's one of the (7) _____ of the world.

B 了解更多关于中国的情况

B1 米莉不认识文章中的一些单词。帮助她将左边的单词与右边的意思配对。在空白处写出正确的字母。

1 皇帝 （第6行） _____
2 观光胜地 （第18行） _____
3 奇迹；奇观 （第21行） _____
4 位于 （第27行） _____
5 洞穴 （第34行） _____
6 租用 （第40行） _____

a 为短时间内使用某物而付钱
b 一个或几个国家的统治者
c 小山侧面或地下的一个大洞
d 使你充满惊奇的事物
e 一个可以去的有趣的地方
f 在一个地方

B2 凯文正在问丹尼尔关于北京的情况。用方框中的单词完成他们的对话。

朝代	聚集	博物馆	宫殿
升起	夏天	奇迹	

凯文：丹尼尔，你曾参观过故宫博物院吗？
丹尼尔：是的，我当然参观过。它是一座两代王朝的宫殿。有24位中国皇帝曾经在那儿住过。
凯文：我们可以进入故宫博物院吗？
丹尼尔：当然可以。现在它作为一个博物馆对大众开放。
凯文：过去，颐和园对于皇帝们来说也是一个宫殿，不是吗？
丹尼尔：是的。对于皇帝们来说，它是个避暑的好地方。
凯文：那你看过升国旗仪式吗？
丹尼尔：是的，我看过。清晨许多游客聚集在天安门广场观看升国旗仪式。
凯文：长城呢？你去过那儿吗？
丹尼尔：当然，正如俗话所说："不到长城非好汉。"它是世界奇迹之一。

未德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B3 The next day, Kevin is telling his friend Chris about Guilin. However, some of the details are wrong. Write a T if a sentence is true or an F if it is false.

1. Guilin is in **eastern**[14] China. _____
2. Guilin **is famous for**[15] its beautiful landscape. _____
3. The Reed Flute Cave is in the south-east of Guilin. _____
4. You can find amazing rocks inside the Reed Flute Cave. _____
5. You can take a boat trip along the Lijiang River. _____
6. You need to buy a bicycle to ride around the countryside. _____

B4 Kevin wants to make notes of the two cities. Help him complete his notes.

Beijing

The Palace Museum: in the (1) _____ of the ancient city, wonderful buildings and (2) _____

Tian'anmen Square: the (3) _____ city square in the world, the raising of the (4) _____

The Summer Palace: in the (5) _____ of Beijing, a large Chinese (6) _____ set in a natural landscape

The Great Wall: over (7) _____ across northern China, was first built more than (8) _____ years ago

Guilin

Location: on the two sides of the (9) _____

What to see: (10) _____ stand in different shapes; the Reed Flute Cave, an (11) _____ cave with (12) _____ in unusual shapes

What to do: take a (13) _____ along the Lijiang River; hire a bicycle and ride around the (14) _____

B3 第二天，凯文正在告诉他的朋友克里斯有关桂林的情况。然而，一些细节是错的。如果句子是正确的写“T”，错误的写“F”。

1. 桂林在中国的东部。 _____
2. 桂林因其优美的风景而著名。 _____
3. 芦笛岩在桂林的东南部。 _____
4. 在芦笛岩中你能看到令人惊奇的岩石。 _____
5. 你可以沿漓江乘船游玩。 _____
6. 你需要买一辆自行车来环绕乡间骑行。 _____

B4 凯文想对这两个城市做些记录。帮助他完成他的记录。

北京

故宫博物院：在古城的中心，宏伟的建筑物和艺术珍宝在里面

天安门广场：世界上最大的城市广场，升国旗仪式

颐和园：在北京的西北部，坐落于自然风景中的一座大型中式园林

长城：横跨中国北部6 000多千米，2 000多年前首次被建造

桂林

位置：位于漓江的两岸

看些什么：奇峰罗列；芦笛岩，一个令人惊奇的洞穴，奇形怪状的岩石

做些什么：沿着漓江乘船游玩；租一辆自行车环游乡间骑行

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶**引人入胜法**：根据标题，我们就知道该Reading的主要内容：介绍中国的两个城市。但该文到底介绍的是哪两个城市呢？标题设置了悬念，吸引了同学们的注意，想一探究竟。

❷**middle** /ˈmɪdl/ *n.* **中间，中央**

考向：固定短语 in the middle of 在……中间

eg：Amy sits **in the middle of** the classroom.
埃米坐在教室的中央。

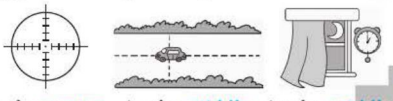
关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

[辨析] middle 与 centre 的三区别：

区别一	表示立体事物的中心（如球心等），一般只用 centre，而不能用 middle。	the **centre** of the ball 球心
区别二	centre 多指物体的正中心，而 middle 则指中间或中部，因而它表示的位置不如 centre 精确。	the **centre** of the room 房间的正中央 the **middle** of the room 房间的中间（不一定在正中间）
区别三	由于 centre 表示的位置比较准确，所以若要表示“在……的中心”，其前不仅可用 in，也可用 at；而 middle 前的介词则通常是 in。	There is a fountain **at/in the centre of** the park. 公园中央有一个喷泉。 He's standing **in the middle of** the room. 他站在房间的中间。

速记小筏

图解 **middle** 与 **centre**：



in the centre of a circle 在圆的中心　in the middle of the road 在马路中间　in the middle of the night 在半夜

❸[高频] used to 过去常常

考向：[重点][易错点]含 used 的短语辨析：

used to do sth.	used to，意为“过去常常”，后接动词原形。
be/get used to sth./doing sth.	be/get used to，意为“习惯于”，后接名词或动词的-ing 形式。
be used to do sth.	be used to do sth. 是被动语态结构，意为“被用来干某事”。

eg:（烟台中考）The Greens **are used to** hanging out in the community after dinner.
格林一家人习惯晚饭后在小区里闲逛。
Knives **are used to** cut things.
刀是被用来切东西的。

【考题在线 1】 Diana used to _____ to work, but now she is used to _____ because the road is crowded and she wants to keep fit. （泰州）
A. drive; walking
B. drive; walk
C. driving; walk
D. driving; walking

点拨：本题用逻辑推理法解题。考查含 used 的短语辨析。used to do sth. 过去常常做某事；be used to doing sth. 习惯于做某事。根据句意可知选 A。

❹raising /ˈreɪzɪŋ/ *n.* 升高

eg: On Tian'anmen Square you can watch the **raising** of the national flag.
在天安门广场你可以看到升国旗仪式。

拓展 raising 动词形式是 raise，意为“升起，举起，饲养，筹集”。

eg: **Raise** your hands up straight so that I can count.
请将你们的手举直，以便我清点人数。
They are going to **raise** money for the school buildings.
他们将为盖校舍筹集资金。
Some people **raise** sheep at home.
一些人在家里养绵羊。

考向：[辨析] raise 与 rise：

raise	raise 用作及物动词，其基本含义是“使升起来，举起”，它的过去分词和过去式都是 raised。
rise	rise 是“上升，上涨，起床，站立”的意思。该词含义较广，总的意思是指依次上升，如自然界的日、月、星、雾、云的上升，人体从睡、跪、坐、躺等姿势站立起来等。该词为不及物动词，其过去式与过去分词分别是 rose 和 risen。

eg: The sun **rises** in the east and sets in the west.
日出于东而落于西。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Heavy rains **raised** the river.
暴雨使河水水位升高。

⑤wonder /ˈwʌndə(r)/ *n.* **奇迹**

考向：wonder 是可数名词，其复数形式是 wonders。

eg：How many **wonders** can you say?
你能说出几大奇迹？

拓展 wonder 还可作动词，意为“想知道，对……感到怀疑”。其用法：A. 后接 who，what，why，where 等引导的宾语从句，表示“想知道……”。B. 后接 that 引导的宾语从句，表示“感到惊奇；对……感到惊讶”，that 常可省去。C. 后接 if 或 whether 引导的宾语从句，常用来表示一种委婉的请求或疑问。

eg：I **wondered where** Millie hid.
我想知道米莉躲在哪儿。
I **wonder** (**that**) she has won the race.
我对她赢了比赛感到惊讶。
I **wonder if** he will succeed.
我不知道他会不会成功。

⑥lie /laɪ/ *vi.* **位于**

考向：表示“位于”的 lie，是不及物动词，没有被动语态。

eg：Our land **lies** between these trees and the river.
我们的土地位于这些树和那条河之间。

拓展 [难点][易错点] lie 作动词，还可意为“躺下，撒谎”，作“躺下”讲时是不规则动词，lie-lay-lain，作“撒谎”讲时是规则动词，lie-lied-lied。

eg：He felt tired, so he went and **lay** down for a rest.
他感到疲劳，所以去躺下休息了。
He **lied** to me.
他对我撒谎了。

⑦shape /ʃeɪp/ *n.* **形状，外形**

eg：In Guilin, you can see mountains in different **shapes** everywhere.
在桂林，你能看到到处都是不同形状的山。

拓展 shape 还可作动词，意为“塑造，使……成形”。

eg：It was the Greeks who **shaped** the thinking of Western men.
正是希腊人塑造了西方人的思维。

⑧[高频] because of 因为，由于

考向：[辨析] because of 与 because：

because 是连词，其后接句子。	I didn't buy it **because** it was too expensive. 我没有买是因为它太贵了。
because of 后接名词、代词、动名词等。	He is here **because of** you. 他为你而来这里。

【考题在线 2】 I didn't accept his help _____ I wanted to try it myself. (陕西)

A. because　　B. though
C. until　　D. unless

点拨：本题用分析句子结构法解题。考查连词。分析该句结构可知前面（I didn't accept his help 我没有接受他的帮助）与后面（I wanted to try it myself 我想亲自去尝试）是因果关系。句意：我没有接受他的帮助，因为我想亲自去尝试。

⑨underground /ˌʌndəˈgraʊnd/ *adj.* **地下的**

eg：There is an **underground** car park near the supermarket.
这个超市附近有一个地下停车场。

拓展 underground *n.* 地铁

eg：A lot of people take the **underground** to work. = A lot of people go to work by **underground**. 许多人乘地铁上班。

⑩hang /hæŋ/ *vi.* & *vt.* **垂下，悬挂**

eg：You may **hang** your coat on the hook.
你可以把外套挂在挂钩上。
Her hair **hung** long in the back.
她的头发长长地披在身后。

拓展 hang 还可意为“绞死，上吊”。

eg：The man was **hanged** for murder.
那名男子因谋杀罪被处绞刑。

【注意】表示“悬挂”的 hang 是不规则动词，其过去式、过去分词都是 hung。而表示“绞死，上吊”则是规则动词，其过去式、过去分词均是 hanged。

特色土方法

hang 词义巧分辨

“上吊需要一把椅子”，hanged 后面的-ed 就像一把椅子一样。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

⓫**point** /pɔɪnt/ *vi.* **指，指向**

考向：[易错点][辨析] point at 与 point to：

point to 意为“指向”，强调方向。	He **pointed to** the door and there I saw a girl smiling at me. 他指向门，我发现那里有一位姑娘朝我微笑着。
point at 表示“指着某人或某物”，强调指的对象，指人时一般表示粗鲁或不礼貌。	The teacher **pointed at** the map and told me where Britain was. 老师指着地图告诉我英国在哪里。

拓展 point 还可作名词，意为“分数，小数点”。

eg: This is FM stereo one zero three **point** seven.
这里是调频立体声 103.7。
They lost the 1977 World Cup Finals to Australia by a single **point**.
他们在 1977 年的世界杯决赛中仅以一分之差输给了澳大利亚队。

⓬[高频]**pay** /peɪ/ *v.* **花费，付钱**

考向：[重点][辨析] spend，cost，pay 与 take：

spend 的主语必须是人	spend time/money on sth. 在某事上花费时间/金钱。 spend time/money (in) doing sth. 花费时间/金钱做某事。
cost 的主语是物或某种活动，还可以表示“值”	sth. costs (sb.) + 金钱，某物花了（某人）多少钱。
pay 的主语必须是人	pay (sb.) money for sth. 付钱（给某人）买……。 pay for sth. 付某物的钱。
take 一般用 it 作形式主语	It takes sb. + 时间 + to do sth. 做某事花了某人多少时间。

eg: (福州中考)— It will **take** only about 50 minutes to travel to Mount Wuyi by high-speed railway.
乘坐高铁去武夷山旅行将只花费大约 50 分钟。
—Wow, how exciting! I can't wait.
喔，太令人兴奋了！我迫不及待了。

【考题在线 3】 —Wow, your sweater is very beautiful!
—Thank you. I bought it two days ago. It _____ me $ 50.
（凉山）【导学号：28374001】
A. took　B. cost　C. paid　D. spent

点拨： 句意：——哇，你的毛衣好漂亮！——谢谢。我两天前买的。它花费我 50 美元。It 指的是 sweater，是物，故用 cost。

⓭[高频]**has been to 到过**

考向：[易错点][辨析] have/has been to，have/has gone to 与 have/has been in：

have/has been to	意为“曾经去过某地”，现在已不在那里了，后可接次数，如 once，twice，three times 等，表示“去过某地几次”；也可和 just，never，ever 等连用。
have/has gone to	表示“去了”，但还没有回来，也许是在去的途中。
have/has been in	表示“在某地呆了多少时间”，常与表示一段时间的状语连用。

eg: (威海中考)—Dad, where is Mom?
爸爸，妈妈在哪儿？
— She **has gone to** the supermarket.
她去超市了。
Tom **has been to** China twice.
汤姆去过中国两次。
I **have been in** Shanghai for three years.
我已经在上海呆了三年了。

【考题在线 4】 —Frank, where is your father?
—He isn't at home. He _____ New York.　（邵阳）
A. has gone to　B. has been to
C. goes to

点拨： 本题用**逻辑推理法**解题。句意：——弗兰克，你爸爸在哪？——他不在家，他去纽约了。has gone to 表示去了某地还没有回来，故选 A。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

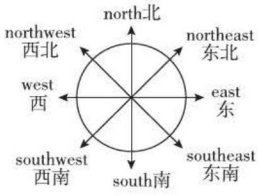
⑭**eastern**/ˈiːstən/*adj.* 东部的,东方的

考向:eastern 是形容词,而 east 则是名词,意为"东部,东方"。

eg:Shanghai is in the **east** of China.
= Shanghai is in the **eastern** part of China.
上海在中国的东部。

归纳 south(南部,南方)/southern(南部的,南方的)west(西部,西方)/western(西部的,西方的)north(北部,北方)/northern(北部的,北方的)southeast 东南、southwest 西南 northeast 东北northwest西北

【图示如下】



⑮[高频]**be famous for** 以……而著名

考向:[辨析]be famous/known for 与 be famous/known as:

be famous/known for 意为"因……而著名",其后所接内容表示某人或物的特点、特长等。	He **is famous for** his learning. 他以有学问而出名。
be famous/known as 意为"作为……而著名",其后的名词表示一个人的身份、职业等。	Liu Huan is **famous/known as** a singer. 刘欢作为一名歌手而出名。

【考题在线 5】Guilin is famous _____ its green hills and clear water. (桂林)
A. with B. of C. for

点拨:本题用固定短语法解题。句意为:桂林因为青山绿水而出名。be famous for 因……而出名;be famous as 作为……而有名。

方法真题练:固定短语法

考题在线答案
1. A 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见 145 页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示,拼写单词

1. Look! There is a small boat in the _____ (中间) of the river.
2. A lot of visitors like to travel to Guilin because mountains there are in different _____ (形状).
3. The girl _____ (指着) to the tiger and asked her father, "Dad, what's that?"
4. The price of the vegetables has _____ (上升) greatly in Wuxi in the last few weeks.
5. There was a large family photo _____ (悬挂) on the wall.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. We all know the Great Wall is one of the greatest _____ (wonder) in the world.
7. —They all say that they're not guilty. Who do you think is not telling the truth?
—I guess Miss Li _____ (lie).
8. When I was a little child, I was told that Shanghai _____ (lie) in East China.
9. This book is so important that it is worth _____ (read) again and again.
10. Professor Jones has studied the culture of _____ (east) countries for three years.

三、单项选择

11. Please take good care of the books _____ from the library. If they are lost, you'll have to pay for them.
A. borrow B. borrowing
C. borrowed D. to borrow
12. —Where is Xi's Family Garden(习家池)?
—It _____ 5 km south to the Old City of Xiangyang. (襄阳)
A. lies B. lives
C. lays D. lists
13. *Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire* is worth _____.
A. watch B. seeing
C. to watch D. to see
14. Hangzhou _____ as the City of Silk. Tourists like shopping for silk there. (河北)
A. knows B. is known
C. was known D. will be known

荣德基 微信公众号 教辅资料站
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

15. More and more people in Shanghai choose to go to work _____ underground. (上海)
A. in B. with
C. by D. for

16. — Do you know our new manager?
—Yes. He _____ to be a friend of my brother. (苏州)
A. turns up
B. turns on
C. turns out
D. turns off

17. Maria _____ watch TV, but now she _____ listening to music. (黔西南)
A. used to; is used to
B. is used to; used to
C. used to; used to
D. is used to; is used to

18. We have to put off _____ our sports meeting _____ the bad weather. (眉山)
A. hold; because
B. hold; because of
C. holding; because
D. holding; because of

19. —It's reported that Chinese _____ more than 40 minutes a day reading WeChat(微信).
—It's true. But I think WeChat is taking too much of our time. (襄阳)
A. spend B. cost
C. pay D. take

20. —The organization WildAid is _____ to protect wild animals.
—It has done a lot so far. (宜昌)
A. cheered up
B. picked up
C. taken up
D. set up

四、完成下列句子

21. 你能用沙子填满这个袋子吗?
_____
_____

22. 由于糟糕的天气,他们明天不能去野营了。
_____
_____

23. Amy 习惯于开着灯睡觉,因为她怕黑。
Amy _____
_____
because she is afraid of darkness.

24. 河两岸有许多美丽的花。
There are many beautiful flowers _____ _____ of the river.

25. 他过去常戴眼镜吗?(used to) (枣庄)
_____

五、综合填空 (泰安)

place, share, important, end, because, influence, successful, across, trade, like

A road is a bridge between two places. The Silk Road has been a bridge between East and West for more than 2,000 years. The Silk Road has been _____[26] included into the UNESCO World Heritage List(世界遗产名录) at the 38th session of World Heritage Committee in Doha.

But did you know: the Silk Road is not a single route(路线)! It is a series of _____[27] and cultural transmission routes. It began during the Western Han Dynasty. The trade route starts from the city of Xi'an in Shaanxi Province and _____[28] in western Europe, near today's Turkey and the Mediterranean Sea. The Silk Road was about 6,500 kilometers long. It went _____[29] one-fourth of the planet.

The Silk Road got its name _____[30] Chinese silk used to be carried along this road. Apart from silk, jade, ceramics and iron went to Rome. From the West came glass, gems and food _____[31] carrots and sesame(芝麻).

The Silk Road was very _____[32] to both China and the rest of the world. Besides trade, knowledge about science, arts and literature, as well as crafts and technologies was _____[33] across the Silk Road. In this way, languages and cultures developed and _____[34] each other.

Today, _____[35] along the Silk Road are great travelling destinations(目的地), such as the terracotta Warriors in Xi'an and Mogao Grottoes in Dunhuang, Gansu.

学霸基地 微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Uses of *it*

A Using *it* as a pronoun

TIP

If an animal is a pet, we usually use **he** or **she** for it.
My cat is very friendly.
She is a happy cat.

- We use **it** for animals and lifeless things.
  Look at the panda. **It** is so small.
  Another famous attraction is the Great Wall. **It** runs for over 6,000 kilometres across northern China.
- We use **it** for a young child when we do not know whether it is a girl or a boy.
  My aunt will have a baby soon. She hopes **it** will be a girl.
  Look at that cute baby over there! **It**'s a boy, isn't **it**?
- We use **it** for an unknown person.
  —Who was calling you on the phone just now?
  —**It** was my cousin.
- We use **it** for an action, a situation or an idea mentioned in a previous statement.
  Riding around the countryside is popular in Guilin, isn't **it**? Tourists like to take a boat trip along the Lijiang River. **It** is great fun.

A visit to the Summer Palace

The exchange students visited the Summer Palace yesterday. Kevin is writing about it. Read the passage below and find out what each it refers to. Write your answers in the blanks.

Yesterday we visited the Summer Palace and spent about three hours in **it**. The palace is a Chinese garden and mainly **includes**[1] a hill and a lake. The lake is very big—**it takes up**[2] **three quarters**[3] of the area. **It** was frozen, so we could not row a boat there. **It** was really a pity. **Across**[4] the lake is a 17-hole bridge. There are many stone lions on **either**[5] side of it. The lions are all different from each other. Isn't it amazing? **While**[6] I was walking along the bridge, my mobile phone rang. **It** was my mum. I told her that the Summer Palace was well worth visiting.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____
7. _____

it 的用法

A 用 it 作代词

提示

如果一只动物是宠物，我们通常用 he 或 she 来指代它。
我的猫非常友好。
她是一只快乐的猫。

· 我们用 it 来指代动物和无生命的事物。
看这只熊猫。 它是如此小。
另一个著名的观光胜地是长城。 它在中国北部地区绵延 6 000 多千米。
· 当我们不知道一个幼儿是女孩还是男孩的时候，我们用 it 来指代它。
我的阿姨不久将有一个宝宝。 她希望它是一个女孩。
看那边那个可爱的婴儿！ 它是一个男孩，不是吗？
· 我们用 it 指代身份不明的人。
“刚才谁在给你打电话？”
“是我的表弟。”
· 我们用 it 来指代前面陈述中提到的动作、情况或看法。
骑车环游乡间在桂林很受欢迎，不是吗？
游客们喜欢乘船沿着漓江游玩。 它是一件很有趣的事。

颐和园之行

交换生们昨天参观了颐和园。 凯文正在写关于这件事的情况。 阅读下面的文章并找出每个 it 指代的是什么。在空白处写下你的答案。

昨天我们参观了颐和园并在里面呆了大约三个小时。 这座宫殿是一个中式园林，主要包括一座小山和一个湖。湖非常大——它占（颐和园）四分之三的面积。 湖结冰了，因此我们不能在那儿划船。 真是可惜。 一座十七孔桥横跨湖面。 桥的两边有很多石狮子。这些狮子形状各异。 这不令人惊奇吗？ 当我正沿着桥走的时候，我的手机响了。 是我的妈妈。 我告诉她颐和园非常值得参观。

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____
4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____
7. _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B Using *it* as an impersonal pronoun

We also use **it** for the time, the date, the weather, the distance, etc.

It is 6:30 p. m. **It** is raining heavily outside.

It is 1 January today. **It** is New Year's Day.

In Beijing, **it** is cold and windy in winter.

It is two kilometres from my school to my home.

Leaving for Shanghai

The exchange students left for[7] Shanghai. Kevin has made some notes in his diary. Rewrite his sentences with it.

1. Today is 22 February. We left Beijing for Shanghai early in the morning.
   _____. We left Beijing for Shanghai early in the morning.
2. Shanghai is about 1,300 kilometres from Beijing.
   _____ from Beijing to Shanghai.
3. I woke up at 5 a. m. this morning.
   _____ when I woke up this morning.
4. I felt a little cold when we went out. The temperature was only 2℃.
   I felt a little cold when we went out. _____.
5. Winter is very cold and dry in Beijing.
   In winter, _____.
6. We **arrived in[8]** Shanghai on a sunny day.
   _____ when we arrived in Shanghai.
7. We got to our hotel at noon.
   _____ when we got to our hotel.
8. Our hotel is not far from the Bund.
   _____ from the Bund to our hotel.

C Using *it* to replace the real subject or object

Sometimes we use **it** to replace the real subject or object in a sentence. In this situation, we put the real subject or object later in the sentence in the form of a **to**-infinitive or a clause.

It is very tiring to climb the steps.

It is popular to hire a bicycle and ride around the countryside.

It is amazing that there are so many rocks in unusual shapes in the cave.

Many people find **it** pleasant to travel around.

Useful structures with it

It is + adjective + (of/for ...) + to ....

It takes ...some time to ....

It is said/reported/...that ....

...think(s)/find(s) **it** easy/difficult/...to ....

B 用 it 作非人称代词

我们也用 it 来指代时间、日期、天气、距离等。

现在是下午 6:30，外面正下着大雨。

今天是一月一日。是新年。

北京的冬天既冷又有风。

我的学校距离我的家两千米远。

去上海

交换生们动身去了上海。凯文已在他的日记中做了一些记录。用 it 来重写他的句子。

1. 今天是 2 月 22 日。我们一大清早就离开北京去了上海。
   今天是 2 月 22 日。我们一大清早就离开北京去了上海。
2. 上海离北京大约 1 300 千米。
   从北京到上海距离大约 1 300 千米。
3. 今天早上我 5:00 醒来。
   我今天早上醒来时是 5:00。
4. 当我们出去的时候我感觉有点冷。温度只有 2℃。
   当我们出去的时候我感觉有点冷。温度只有 2℃。
5. 在北京，冬天很冷且干燥。
   在冬天，北京的天气很冷且干燥。
6. 在一个晴朗的日子里，我们到达了上海。
   当我们到达上海的时候，天气晴朗。
7. 我们在中午到达了旅馆。
   当我们到达旅馆的时候是中午。
8. 我们的旅馆距离外滩不远。
   从外滩到我们的旅馆不远。

C 用 it 来代替真正的主语或宾语

有时我们用 it 来代替句中真正的主语或宾语。在这种情况下，我们把真正的主语或宾语以动词不定式或从句的形式放在句子的后面。

爬台阶真累人。

租一辆自行车环游乡间骑行很受欢迎。

令人惊奇的是，在洞穴里有如此多奇形怪状的岩石。

许多人发现到处旅行很愉快。

it 的常用句型

(……/对……来说)做……是……的

花费……一些时间去……

据说/据报道……

……认为/发现做……是容易的/困难的/……

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

About Shanghai

Miss Thompson, a British teacher travelling with the exchange students, is writing down what she thinks about Shanghai. Help her complete her notes with it.

Traffic: The traffic is often busy, but public transport here is quite good, so (1)_____ (easy) for people to get around.

Weather: (2)_____ (sunny) and warm. We like (3)_____ here.

Environment: (4)_____ (said) that the air is not clean here, but I do not think the pollution is as serious as I imagined.

Sights: Shanghai is beautiful. (5)_____ (fun) to ride around the city and visit the interesting places.

Food: Chinese food is delicious. I will ask my family to go to a Chinese restaurant and try (6)_____ when I get back.

Hotel: We all think (7)_____ (comfortable) to stay in this hotel. They **provide**[9] a high level of **service**[10].

People: The local people are friendly. (8)_____ (kind) of them to answer all our questions.

关于上海

汤普森小姐，与交换生们一起旅行的一位英国老师，正在写下她对上海的看法。帮助她用 it 完成她的记录。

交通：交通经常是繁忙的，但这儿的公共交通设施是相当好的，因此对于人们来说四处走动很容易。

天气：天气晴朗、暖和。我们喜欢这里的天气。

环境：据说这儿的空气不干净，但我认为污染没有我想象的那么严重。

风景：上海很漂亮。骑自行车环绕这个城市并参观好玩的地方很有趣。

食物：中国的食物是美味的。当我回去后，我将叫我的家人去一家中式餐馆并尝试它。

旅馆：我们都认为所住的这家旅馆很舒适。他们提供高水平的服务。

人们：当地的人们是友好的。他们很友善地回答了我们所有的问题。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶include /ɪn'klu:d/ *vt.* 包括，包含，列入

考向：include 作及物动词，意为“包括，包含，列入”；including，介词，意为“包括”。

eg: His writings **include** poetry and prose.
他的作品包括诗和散文。
I have three dresses, **including** the new one.
包括那件新的，我有三件裙子。

❷[高频] take up 占据(空间)，占用(时间)

考向：take up，意为“占据，占用”。

eg: They **take up** too much space.
它们占了太多空间。

拓展 take up 还可意为“开始从事；学着做，开始做”。

eg: —What are you going to do during the summer vacation?
暑假期间你打算做什么？
—I am going to **take up** a new hobby like swimming or dancing.
我准备开始培养一个新爱好，比如游泳或跳舞。

归纳 常见的含 take 的短语：
take off 起飞，脱掉；take on 呈现；take out 拿出，取出；take care 当心，注意；take place 发生；take in 吸收；take away 拿走；take care of 照顾，照看；take part in 参加；take down 记下，写下，拿下；take back 拿回，收回

【考题在线 1】 —What do you think of the sofa?
—Not bad, but it may _____ too much space of our living room. (扬州)

A. take up　　B. put up
C. open up　　D. make up

点拨：本题用辨析法解题。考查动词词组辨析。句意：——你觉得这个沙发怎么样？——还不错，但它会_____起居室太多的空间。take up 意为“占据(时间或空间)”。根据题意中“太多的空间”可知，用“占据”最为贴切。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

③three quarters 四分之三

考向:[易错点]当分数后接 of +名词短语作句子的主语时,如果其后的名词是复数形式,句子的谓语动词应该用复数形式,如果其后的名词是不可数名词,则句子的谓语动词应该用单数形式。

eg: **Three quarters of** the students like English. 四分之三的学生喜欢英语。

Three quarters of the earth is covered with water.
地球的四分之三覆盖着水。

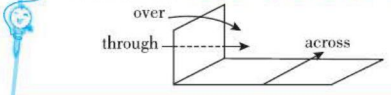
知识微课:across

④[高频]across/əˈkrɒs/*prep.* **穿过**

考向:[辨析]across, through 与 over:

across 主要表示从某物的表面"横过",涉及"面"的概念,常指从一边到另一边。	Can you swim **across** the river? 你能游过那条河吗?
through 指在立体空间中"穿过",从物体的内部穿过。	Be careful to go **through** the forest. 穿过森林要当心。
over 侧重越过某种障碍物等。	We must go **over** the hill. 我们必须翻过这座小山。

速记小筏



【考题在线2】A woman stood _____ the window, watching the children playing games in the garden. (德州)

A. past B. through
C. across D. by

点拨:本题用辨析法解题。考查介词用法。past 指从物体的旁边经过,意为"走过,经过";through 意为"穿过、通过",表示从某个范围的一端到另一端,强调动作是从物体的内部经过,往往指穿过沙漠、森林、窗户等。across 意为"横过;穿过",强调从某个范围的一边到另一边;by 指在……旁边。

⑤[高频]either/ˈaɪðə(r)/*det. & pron. & adv.* **两者之一**

考向一:either 用作代词,意为"(两者之中)任一、任何一个"。

eg:(杭州中考)Unfortunately I was sitting at the table with smokers on **either** side of me.
不幸的是我坐的桌子两边有吸烟者。

考向二:either 用作副词,用于否定句作"也"解释,通常置于句末。

eg: Amy doesn't like meat. I don't like it **either**.
埃米不喜欢肉。我也不喜欢。

考向三:either 可以构成短语,either ... or ...,意为"或……或……,不是……就是……",在句中连接两个并列成分。

[易错点]在连接两个并列主语时,谓语动词必须在人称和数上与相近的主语保持一致。

eg: **Either** you **or** he goes swimming with me.
你或者他和我一起去游泳。

【考题在线3】—Can I come today or tomorrow?
—_____ is OK. I'm busy today and tomorrow. (青岛)

A. Either B. Neither C. Each D. None

点拨:本题用辨析法解题。考查代词辨析。句意:——我是今天来还是明天来?——都不行。我今天和明天都很忙。Either 两者中的任何一个,Neither 两者都不,Each 每一个,None 三者(或三者以上)都不。根据后面说我今天和明天都忙可知答案。

⑥[高频]while/waɪl/*conj.* **当……的时候,虽然,尽管,然而** *n.* **一段时间,一会儿**

考向一:while 引导时间状语从句,从句中的谓语动词应用延续性动词。

eg:(淮安中考)I was writing a diary **while** my brother was watching TV yesterday evening.
昨天晚上我在写日记的时候,我的弟弟在看电视。

考向二:引导让步状语从句,多用于句首。意为"尽管,虽然"。

eg: **While** he loves his students, he is very strict with them. 虽然他爱他的学生,可是他对他们很严格。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考向三：while 作并列连词用，意思为“而，然而”，表前后意义上的对比或转折。

eg：The girl likes tennis **while** I like football.
这个女孩喜欢网球，而我喜欢足球。

【考题在线 4】—When did the classroom have a power cut?
—This morning, while we _____ a physics lesson. （南京）
A. have had　　B. were having
C. are having　　D. will have

点拨：while 当……的时候。答句句意：早上，当我们正在上物理课的时候。根据句意可知选 B。

拓展 for a while 一会儿；in a while 一会儿之后

7 leave for 离开去……

考向：leave for B 表示“离开去 B 地”，而 leave A for B 则表示“离开 A 到 B 去”。注意 leave 的过去式与过去分词均是 left。

eg：When are you **leaving for** Beijing?
你准备何时动身去北京？
When are you **leaving** Nanjing **for** Beijing?
你准备何时从南京动身去北京？

8 [高频] arrive in 到达

eg：I **arrived in** Shanghai yesterday.
我昨天抵达上海。

考向：[辨析] arrive，reach 与 get：

arrive	arrive 是不及物动词，表示“到达、抵达某地（尤指行程的终点）”，后常接介词 at 或 in，一般 in 接大地方，at 接小地方，若是地点副词，则不需用介词。
reach	reach 是及物动词，直接接宾语，无须介词。
get	get 也是不及物动词，只是它多用于口语，其后接的介词是 to，后面如接副词，则不用介词 to。

eg：When will Henry **arrive at** the park?
亨利什么时候到公园？
Lily **got** home at 7 o'clock.
莉莉七点到家。

They didn't **reach** the border until after dark. 他们天黑以后才到达边境。

【考题在线 5】It was such a long way that they didn't _____ the hotel until it became dark. （哈尔滨）
A. reach　　B. arrive　　C. get

点拨：本题用排除法解题。句意：路那么远，直到天变黑了他们才到达旅馆。reach、arrive，get 都可以表示到达，但是 get 和 arrive 都是不及物动词，后跟名词宾语时，要加介词，排除；reach 为及物动词，可直接跟宾语。

9 provide /prəˈvaɪd/ *v.* **提供**

eg：（聊城中考）The company can **provide** lunch for you if you work there.
如果你在那儿工作，公司能为你提供午餐。

考向：[辨析] provide 与 offer：

provide 指有远见，为应付意外、紧急情况等作好充分准备而“供给、提供”。	The school **provided** food **for** the students. 学校为学生提供伙食。
可用于 provide sb. with sth. 或 provide sth. for sb. 结构。	They **provided** us **with** all the books we need. 他们为我们提供了所需要的所有书籍。
offer 侧重表示“愿意给予”，常用于 offer sb. sth./sth. to sb. 或 offer to do sth. 结构。	She **offered me** a cup of tea. 她给我端了杯茶。 He **offered to** go instead of me. 他主动提出代替我去。

【考题在线 6】The newly-opened company _____ the local people with more chances to work. （连云港）
A. gives　　B. provides
C. offers　　D. shows

点拨：本题用固定结构法解题。句意：新开的这家公司给当地人提供了更多工作机会。provide sb. with sth. 意为“给某人提供某物”，为固定结构。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

⑩**service** /ˈsɜːvɪs/ *n.* 服务，工作

考向一：通常构成固定短语 in service，意为“服务，在使用”，相当于 in use。

eg：The highway has been **in use/service** for two years.

这条高速公路已经使用两年了。

考向二：其动词形式为 serve，意为“服务”，后常接 as，再接名词，表示“作为……服务”。

eg：The sofa will **serve as** a bed for a night or two.

沙发可以当床凑合一两夜。

【考题在线 7】The underground has been in _____ (serve) since last May.

点拨：本题用题眼法解题。句意：从去年五月份开始，地铁就已经开始运行了。此题考查介词后用名词形式，根据 in，可知用名词形式。

培养“服务他人”素养

美国志愿服务（service）遍布社会各个角落，其精神深入人心，是国家的文化传统（traditional culture）。美国志愿服务范围很广，从家庭、学校、机关、教堂（church）到市里，都可以看到有志愿人员在服务（serve）。在美国有不成文的鼓励政策，志愿服务时间长表现特殊的人，在升学，就业方面会被优先考虑或重视（pay attention to）。

【素养行动】让我们中学生积极地加入志愿服务中来吧！我们可以帮助学习上有困难的同学，照顾病人、老人和小孩；我们也可做家庭教师，到社区内粉刷（paint）房间等。

【素养行动结果】学会奉献、感恩、融入团体，从而体现社会价值，使生命更充实。

考题在线答案

1. A　2. D　3. B　4. B　5. A　6. B　7. service

Ⅲ 语法沙龙　夺取中考语法满分

代词 it 的用法



考点 1：it 作为人称代词的用法

我们常用 it 作人称代词，代替人、事、物等。表解如下：

it 作为人称代词的用法	it 用来指代动物或无生命的事物。
	it 用来指代不清楚性别的小孩。
	it 用来指代不明身份的人。
	it 用来指代前面提到过的事物。

eg：（重庆 B 中考）I always believe that nothing is difficult if we try our best to do **it**.

我总是相信如果我们尽我们最大努力去做的话，没有什么是困难的（事）。

【考题在线 1】—Is this iPad yours?

—Yes. My parents bought _____ for my language learning. （安徽）

A. one

B. it

C. other

D. another

考点 2：it 作为非人称代词的用法

it 可以用来指代时间、日期、天气、温度、距离等。

eg：（菏泽中考）When we got to the park yesterday, **it** started raining.

昨天当我们到公园时，天开始下雨了。

考点 3：it 作形式主语或形式宾语的用法

it 还可以用来作为形式主语或形式宾语，指代动词不定式或从句。

eg：（成都中考）**It**'s true that we are not born for ourselves.

我们不是为我们自己而生，这是真的。

【考题在线 2】—Did you have any difficulty in today's homework?

—No, in fact I found _____. （武威）

A. it very easy to do　　B. it very easy done

C. it's very easy doing　　D. very easy to do

点拨：本题用固定句型法解题。句意：——今天的作业有什么困难吗？——没有，事实上我发现它很容易做。本题考查固定句型：sb. finds it + 形容词 + to do (sth.)，某人发现做某事……。

考题在线答案

1. B　2. A

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见145页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. Our English teacher _____ (leave) Nanjing for Beijing for a meeting yesterday.
2. We should try our best to _____ (service) the people when we grow up.
3. One _____ (quarter) of the boys in our class like ball games.
4. Mr. Li told us the sunlight _____ (include) seven different colors.
5. I don't like _____ (either) of the shopping bags because both of them are too large.

二、单项选择

6. When he was unknown _____ the people, he served _____ a singer at a bar.
   A. for; for B. to; as
   C. for; to D. to; to
7. —Excuse me, where is the bookstore?
   —Go _____ the bridge. You'll see it on your left. (铜仁)【导学号: 28374002】
   A. on B. cross
   C. across D. through
8. —Mike, what were your parents doing at 8:00 last night?
   —My mother was reading _____ my father was playing computer games. (黄冈)
   A. while B. when
   C. unless D. as long as
9. —How are you getting along with your English study?
   —Much better. I don't feel it as _____ as before. (泰安)
   A. interesting B. much
   C. difficult D. easy
10. Soccer is a wonderful game for children. It _____ great exercise, such as running and kicking. (河南)
    A. provides B. remains
    C. practices D. receives

三、语法专练

11. —_____ nearly took us an hour to walk here.
    —Have a drink, then. You _____ be thirsty. (黔南州)
    A. This; may B. It; may
    C. This; must D. It; must
12. _____ is very dangerous to swim alone in the river. (永州)
    A. It B. This C. That
13. We find _____ impossible for us to learn physics well in a short time.
    A. that B. it C. this D. one
14. Bill thought _____ necessary to work with friends and share different ideas. (兰州)
    A. it B. they C. them D. him
15. —He was nearly drowned once.
    —When was _____?
    —_____ was in 1998 when he was in middle school.
    A. that; It B. this; This
    C. this; It D. that; This
16. Someone is ringing the doorbell. Go and see _____.
    A. who is he B. who he is
    C. who is it D. who it is
17. Mike's mother kept telling him that he should work hard, but _____ didn't help.
    A. he B. it C. she D. which
18. I found _____ had changed a lot when I went to my hometown again. (泰安)
    A. there B. it C. he D. this
19. —Do you like _____ here?
    —Oh, yes, the air, the weather and the way of life. Everything is so nice.
    A. this B. there C. that D. it
20. _____ is a fact that English is being accepted as an international language.
    A. There B. This C. That D. It

四、完成下列句子

21. _____ (据报道) a lot of people lost their jobs in the city last month.
22. _____ (看来) nobody knows what has happened.
23. 从我家到学校大约3公里。
    _____ from my home to school.
24. 王子被女巫变成了一只青蛙。
    The prince _____ a frog by the witch.
25. 人适应环境的速度之快真是惊人。
    _____ how quickly people adapt.

禁德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A A trip to Japan

A1 The exchange students are going to Japan after visiting Shanghai. Listen to Millie introducing their itinerary. Match the days on the left with their activities on the right.

课文听力A1音频及材料

A tour of Japan

Day 1

Day 2

Day 3

Day 4

leave Japan for **another**[1] Asian country

visit Kyoto, an ancient city of culture

take a tour of Tokyo, the capital city

visit Mount Fuji, Japan's highest mountain

A2 Miss Thompson is telling the exchange students about their trip to Japan. Kevin is making notes. Listen carefully and help Kevin complete his notes.

课文听力A2音频及材料

- leave Shanghai at (1) _____ on (2) _____
- arrive in (3) _____ around (4) _____
- see the main (5) _____ and go (6) _____; visit the Tokyo (7) _____ to see some Japanese (8) _____
- travel to (9) _____ by (10) _____ **on**[2] the second day; can go (11) _____ there
- visit the ancient city Kyoto on the third day and learn about Japanese (12) _____
- try all kinds of Japanese (13) _____ during our **stay**[3] in Japan

A3 Kevin is writing about the exchange students' trip to Japan. Help him complete it. Use the information in Parts A1 and A2 to help you.

The trip to Japan

We are leaving for Japan soon. Japan is the second country we are going to visit in Asia. Our flight will be (1) _____ on 25 February, and we plan to stay there for (2) _____.

综合技能

A 日本之旅

A1 交换生们参观上海之后打算去日本。听米莉介绍他们的旅程。把左边的日期与右边他们的活动搭配起来。

日本之旅

第一天

第二天

第三天

第四天

离开日本去另一个亚洲的国家

参观京都，一座文化古城

参观东京，首都城市

参观富士山，日本最高的山

A2 汤普森小姐正在给交换生们讲述关于他们日本之旅的情况。凯文正在做记录。认真听并帮助凯文完成他的记录。

- 看到主要的风景，并且去购物了；参观东京国家博物馆去看一些日本的艺术品
- 在二月25日九点离开上海
- 大约中午到达东京
- 在第二天，乘大巴到富士山旅游；在那儿可以去滑雪
- 在第三天，参观古城京都，了解日本文化
- 在我们待在日本的期间，品尝各种日本的食品

A3 凯文正在写关于交换生们的日本之旅的情况。帮助他完成记录。用A1和A2部分中的信息帮助你。

日本之旅

不久我们要去日本了。日本是我们将在亚洲参观的第二个国家。我们的航班将会在2月25日上午九点，我们计划在那儿呆四天。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

First, we are going to visit (3)_____. It is Japan's capital city. We can see the main (4)_____ and go (5)_____ there. Our teacher, Miss Thompson, is also going to take us to the (6)_____ to see some Japanese (7)_____.

On the second day, we are going to take a (8)_____ to (9)_____. It is Japan's (10)_____ mountain. We can go (11)_____ there.

On the third day, we are going to visit an ancient city called (12)_____ and learn about Japanese (13)_____.

During our stay in Japan, we can also try all kinds of Japanese (14)_____.

I hope we will have a very nice trip.

B Speak up: Where's Singapore?


课文朗读B

The exchange students will also visit Singapore. Simon's cousin Annie is asking Simon about the country. Work in pairs and talk about an Asian country. Use the conversation below as a model.

Annie: Where's Singapore, Simon?
Simon: It's **in**[4] South East Asia.
Annie: It's very small, isn't it?
Simon: Yes, it is. It's a city state.
Annie: How many people are there in Singapore?
Simon: There are about five **million**[5] people there.
Annie: What languages do they speak?
Simon: Most people can speak **both** English **and**[6] Chinese.

Study skills

Understanding body language

Body language, as a form of communication, is different from culture to culture. For example, nodding one's head means "agreement" and shaking one's head means "disagreement" in most countries, but in some countries of South Asia, it is just the opposite.

Look at the gesture below. What does it mean? In different places, it means different things.

In most cultures, it means "OK"; in Russia, Brazil and Turkey, it is an insult; in France and Belgium, it means "zero" or "worthless"; in Japan, it means "money".

首先，我们打算参观东京。它是日本的首都城市。我们能看到主要的景观，也能购物。我们的老师，汤普森小姐也将带我们去东京博物馆看一些日本的艺术品。

在第二天，我们打算乘长途汽车去富士山。它是日本最高的山。在那儿，我们可以去滑雪。

在第三天，我们打算参观一个古城，叫作京都，并了解日本的文化。

在我们呆在日本期间，我们也可以品尝各种日本的美食。

我希望我们能有一次非常愉快的旅行。

B 大声说：新加坡在哪里？

交换生们也将参观新加坡。西蒙的表妹安妮，正在问西蒙关于这个国家的情况。结对练习，并谈论一个亚洲国家。用下面的对话作为示例。

安妮：新加坡在哪里，西蒙？
西蒙：它在东南亚。
安妮：它非常小，不是吗？
西蒙：是的，它很小。它是一个城市国家。
安妮：在新加坡有多少人？
西蒙：那儿大约有500万人。
安妮：他们讲什么语言？
西蒙：大部分人会说英语和汉语。

学习技巧

理解肢体语言

肢体语言，作为交流的一种形式，在不同的文化中是有差异的。例如，在大部分国家，点头意味着"同意"，摇头意味着"不同意"，但在南亚的一些国家，它刚好相反。

看下面的手势。它是什么意思？在不同的地方，它有不同的含义。

在大多数文化中，它意味着"好，可以"；在俄罗斯、巴西和土耳其，它是一种侮辱；在法国和比利时，它意味着"零"或"毫无价值"；在日本它意味着"金钱"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Here are the meanings of some common kinds of body language in the West:

Body language	Possible meaning
head held down	shy, ashamed
head raised	confident
looking down	dishonest
looking away	bored, uninterested
looking in the eyes	friendly, interested, honest
crossed arms	not open, unfriendly, angry
open arms	open, friendly
hands on the sides	impatient, angry

Sometimes the words a person uses do not match his or her body language. When this happens, it is often more important to look at their body language.

Match the pictures with the meanings. Write the correct letter in each box.

a Glad to see you.
b I can do it!
c I did something wrong.

1. ☐ 2. ☐ 3. ☐

下面是西方一些常见肢体语言的含义。

肢体语言	可能的含义
低头	害羞的，惭愧的
抬头	自信的
向下看	不诚实的
转移目光	无聊的，不感兴趣的
正视	友好的，感兴趣的，诚实的
交叉手臂	不开放的，不友好的，生气的
张开手臂	开放的，友好的
手在两边	没有耐心的，生气的

有时，一个人使用的词与他/她的肢体语言不一致。当出现这种情况的时候，看他们的肢体语言往往更加重要。

把图片与释义搭配起来。在每个方框中写下正确的字母。

a 见到你很高兴。
b 我会做它！
c 我做错了某件事。

1. ☐ 2. ☐ 3. ☐

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶[高频] **another** /əˈnʌðə(r)/ *pron.* 另一个 *adj.* 另一个的

考向一：another 指的是“三者或三者以上中的另外一个”。固定结构：another + 基数词 + 名词 = 基数词 + more + 名词，其意思是“另外/再多少个……”。

eg: We need **two more** chairs. = We need **another two** chairs.
我们还需要另外两把椅子。

考向二：[辨析] another, other, the other, others 与 the others：

another	既可作形容词，也可作代词，只能用于三个或更多的人或物，泛指同类事物中的三者或三者以上的“另一个”。
other	可作形容词或代词，意思是“别的，其他”，泛指“其他的（人或物）”。
the other	指两者中的一个时，用 the other。
others	是 other 的复数形式，泛指“另外的，其余的”。在句中可作主语、宾语。
the others	意思是“其他东西，其余的人”。特指某一范围内的“其他的（人或物）”。

eg:（滨州中考）—I still want to drink something. May I have **another** cup of juice?
我还想要喝点东西。我能再喝一杯果汁吗？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

—Certainly. Here you are.
当然了。给你。

【考题在线1】—Would you like _____ cake?
—Thanks, but I'm full. (龙东)
A. another B. other C. the other
点拨:考查形容词辨析。句意:——你想要_____蛋糕吗?——谢谢,但我饱了。根据单数名词 cake 可知此处用 another。

【考题在线2】The twins are in different classes. One is in Class One and _____ is in Class Two. (株洲)
A. another B. other C. the other
点拨:考查代词。句意:这对双胞胎在不同的班级。一个在一班,一个在二班。题干提示 The twins,故可知为两个人。one... the other... 意为"一个……另一个……",固定搭配。

❷on/ɒn/*prep.* 在

考向:[辨析]on, in 与 at:

on	on 后常接某日,星期几或某日的早、中、晚,节日等。
in	in 后常接年、月、上午、下午、晚上、白天、季节、世纪等。
at	at 后常接几点几分、中午、日出、日落、开始等。

速记小筏
on、in 和 at 用法巧记:
on"在具体某一天","当某时",动名词,arrival,death 前;
early,late 位句先,用 in 一般"上""下""晚";
on 用于天,in 用于月、季、年;
限定三时 in 要变。
at 是个时间点,"工作""时刻"与"圣诞"。
at noon(night),in the day,习惯用语记心间。

eg:(重庆A中考)A terrible earthquake happened in Nepal **on** April 25th, 2015.
2015年4月25日,尼泊尔发生了一场严重的地震。

【考题在线3】—When will our guests arrive at the airport?
—_____ the evening of this Saturday. (宿迁)
A. At B. Of C. In D. On
点拨:本题用辨析法解题。考查介词辨析。句意:——我们的客人什么时候到达机场?——在这周六的晚上。具体到某一天的早、中、晚用介词 on。

【考题在线4】—Do you know Victory Day in China?
—Yes, it's _____ September 3rd _____ each year. It tells the world that Chinese people love peace and hate wars. Chinese people will never forget the history. (凉山)
A. in; on B. on; /
C. at; / D. on; in
点拨:考查介词的应用。句意:——你知道中国的抗战胜利纪念日吗?——知道,它是在每年的九月三日。它告诉世界中国人民热爱和平讨厌战争。中国人民永远不会忘记这段历史。in 用在年、月、季节前;at 用在具体的时刻前;on 用在具体的某一天前。

❸stay/steɪ/ *n.* 停留,逗留 *v.* 停留,逗留,保持

考向一:stay 作名词,during one's stay 意为"某人待在某地期间",for a short stay 意为"短暂停留"。

eg:Some birds live in Zhalong **for a short stay**. 一些鸟在扎龙仅短暂停留。

考向二:stay 作行为动词时的常见短语:stay at home 意为"待在家里",stay in bed 意为"待在床上",stay out 意为"待在外面",stay up 意为"熬夜"。

eg:(龙东中考)On Fridays, I often **stay up** with my sister and watch *Running Man* at home.
在周五,我经常和妹妹在家熬夜看《奔跑吧,兄弟》。

考向三:stay 还可作连系动词,意为"保持",后接形容词,构成系表结构。stay healthy 意为"保持健康",stay awake 意为"保持清醒",stay young 意为"保持年轻"。

eg:I can't **stay awake** any longer.
我瞌睡得再也熬不住了。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

【考题在线5】—Tom, what's wrong with you? You look tired.
—Oh, I _____ late to watch a football game last night. I slept for only two hours. （荆门）
A. gave up　　B. looked up
C. set up　　D. stayed up

点拨：本题用**逻辑推理法**解题。句意：——汤姆，你怎么了？你看上去很累。——哦，昨晚我_____很晚看足球赛。我只睡了两个小时。give up 放弃；look up 查阅；set up 建立；stay up 熬夜。根据答语第二句只睡了两个小时，可知第一句表示熬夜。

【考题在线6】—Don't _____ too late; you will feel tired in class.
—I won't, Mum. （泰安）
A. call up　　B. wake up
C. stay up　　D. get up

点拨：考查动词短语辨析。句意：——不要_____太晚，在课堂上你会觉得累。——我不会的，妈妈。call up“召集”；wake up“唤醒”；stay up“熬夜”；get up“起床”。根据下文“在课堂上你会觉得累”，可推知妈妈不让熬夜。

❹表示方位介词的 in，to 和 on 的用法

考向：[易错点][辨析]in，on 与 to：

in	含义是“在……之内”，即一个小地方处在一个大地方的范围（疆域）之内。
on	含义是“在……端/边”，即一个地方在另一个地方的某一端或某一边，两个地方只是相邻或接壤，却互不管辖。
to	含义是“在……外面”，即一个地方在另一个地方的范围之外，互不管辖。尤其当两个地方相隔较远，且有湖泊、大海等区域相隔时，通常用 to。

eg：（绥化中考）Heilongjiang Province is **in** the northeast of China.
黑龙江省在中国的东北部。
America is **on** the south of Canada.
美国在加拿大的南边。
Japan is **to** the east of China.
日本在中国的东边。

速记小筏

方位介词 in，on 和 to 巧分辨

★表示“在某范围之内”，强调两者的包含关系用 in；
★表示“两地接壤”，强调两者为相邻关系用 on；
★表示“在某范围之外”，强调两者是远离关系用 to。

【考题在线7】—Where is North Korea?
—It lies _____ the northeast of China. （三明）【导学号：28374003】
A. on　　B. to　　C. in　　D. at

点拨：本题用**常识法**解题。句意：——朝鲜在哪儿？——它位于中国的东北部。在表示方位时，选项 A 表示接壤、毗邻；选项 B 表示在范围之外，即二者之间有距离间隔；选项 C 表示在范围之内；选项 D 表示在一点。结合常识可知朝鲜和中国毗邻。

❺million /ˈmɪljən/ *num.* 百万

考向：hundred，thousand 和 million 的用法：

(1) 当这些词与具体数字连用时，不加-s，而且后不接介词 of。
eg：Four **million** people were affected.
四百万人被感染了。

(2) 当这些词不与具体数字连用，而是表示不确定的泛指时，则不仅要加-s，而且要后接介词 of，然后接名词。
eg：（牡丹江中考）Mudanjiang government is going to plant **thousands of** trees around the city to make it greener and more beautiful.
牡丹江政府要在全城栽数千棵树，使它变得更绿，更美。

(3) [易错点] 当这些词后面的名词有了 the，these，those 等特指限定词修饰时，或其后接的是 us，them 这样的人称代词时，必须用介词 of。
eg：There were just **a hundred of** them there.
那里只有他们一百人。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 8】Sam enjoys collecting stamps. He has collected over three _____ stamps. (河池)

A. hundred B. hundreds
C. hundred of D. hundreds of

点拨:本题用题眼法解题。考查数词的用法。句意:萨姆喜欢集邮。他已经收集了三百多张邮票了。本空前有数词 three,具体数字,hundred 不加-s,且后不得跟 of。

【考题在线 9】Unluckily, _____ people were killed in the earthquake. (安顺)

A. two thousands B. thousand of
C. two thousands of D. thousands of

⑥both ... and ... 两者都

考向:连接两个并列的主语时,谓语动词用复数形式;而 not only ... but also ..., either ... or ..., neither ... nor ... 连接两个并列的主语时,遵循"就近原则"。

eg:**Both** he **and** I are from Australia.
他和我都来自澳大利亚。
Not only he **but also** I am from Australia.
他和我都来自澳大利亚。

【考题在线 10】—I hear _____ your grandpa _____ your grandma enjoy watching Beijing Opera. (黔南州)
—Right, just as many old people do.

A. both; and B. neither; nor
C. either; or D. not only; but also

点拨:本题用题眼法解题。A 两者都;B 两者都不;C 或者……或者……;D 不但……而且……。根据 enjoy 可知答案,因为 B、C、D 都是就近原则。

考题在线答案
1. A 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. D 6. C 7. A 8. A 9. D 10. A

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见 146 页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示拼写单词

1. I think the _____ (主要的) idea of the article is how to protect ourselves.
2. —How many _____ (州) are there in America?
—Over fifty.
3. These people aren't Chinese. They're _____ (日本人).
4. It's important for us to _____ (保持) healthy.
5. No one believes the boy because he is a _____ (不诚实的) child.

二、单项选择

6. Donald Trump, _____ 71-year-old businessman, was chosen _____ President of the US. (连云港)

A. a; a B. a; /
C. the; a D. the; the

7. _____ my parents _____ my best friend, Jim, think I can make a good accountant because I'm good at math.

A. Both; and B. Not only; but also
C. Neither; nor D. Either; or

8. Cambridge is a small city _____ the east of England. (天津)

A. between B. with C. in D. under

9. —Kate is _____ American girl, right?
—Yes. She is from _____ United States. (绵阳)

A. a; the B. an; a
C. a; a D. an; the

10. We can't do it that way—but whether it will work is _____ matter. (安徽)

A. other B. another C. each D. every

11. The WWF is working hard _____ the animals in danger. (南宁)

A. save B. to save C. saves D. saved

12. —Do you know the exact date of his death?
—No, but I remember he died _____ a cold Friday night. (宁夏)

A. in B. by C. on D. at

13. Don't _____ too late, or you will feel tired next day.

A. wake up B. get up
C. stay up D. show up

14. Last week, five _____ students took part in the sports meeting in our school. (凉山)

A. hundred B. thousands
C. hundreds of D. thousands of

15. —Would you please tell me _____ in today's newspaper?
—Sorry, I haven't read it yet. (眉山)

A. something important B. important something
C. anything important D. important anything

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

I. 课文原文及译文

Task

My favourite Asian country

A Miss Thompson asked the Class 1, Grade 9 students to suggest a country in Asia for them to visit. Millie would like to suggest India, and she has prepared some notes of it. Read her notes.

Country: India
Location: in South Asia, next to Pakistan, China and Nepal
Capital city: New Delhi
Languages: mainly Hindi, English as a second language
Population: over one billion, the second largest **population**[1] in the world
Crops: rice and wheat
Main industries: large iron and steel industry
famous for IT (information technology) industry
Customs: many festivals and fairs
saris—traditional clothes for women
Attraction: Taj Mahal

B Millie is writing an introduction to India. Help her complete her article with the information in Part A.

I think (1)_____ is a great country to visit. It lies in (2)_____, next to (3)_____, China and Nepal. Its capital city is (4)_____.

People in India mainly speak (5)_____, but their second language is (6)_____, so it is not too difficult to communicate with the local people. India has the (7)_____ largest population in the world. There are over (8)_____ people there. Rice and (9)_____ are their main crops. India has a large iron and (10)_____ industry. It is also famous for its IT industry.

India has many (11)_____ and fairs. A festival is celebrated in some part of the country every day of the year. Traditional clothes for Indian women are (12)_____. You may have seen them in Indian films.

There are some famous attractions in India. The (13)_____ is well worth a visit. It is one of the wonders of the world.

任务

我最喜爱的亚洲国家

A 汤普森小姐请九年级一班的学生向他们建议一个亚洲国家去游览。米莉想建议去印度，并且她已经准备了一些关于印度的记录。读一读她的记录。

国家：印度
位置：在南亚，紧靠巴基斯坦、中国和尼泊尔
首都城市：新德里
语言：主要讲印地语，英语作为第二语言
人口：超过十亿，世界上的第二大人口
农作物：水稻和小麦
主要工业：大型的钢铁工业
因信息技术产业而闻名
风俗：许多节日和集市
莎丽——传统的女士服装
观光胜地：泰姬陵

B 米莉正在写对印度的介绍。用A部分中的信息帮她完成文章。

我认为印度是一个可以去参观的好国家。它位于南亚，紧靠巴基斯坦、中国和尼泊尔。它的首都城市是新德里。

印度人主要讲印地语，但他们的第二语言是英语，因此与当地人交流不是太困难。印度拥有世界上第二大的人口。那儿有十亿多人。水稻和小麦是他们的主要农作物。印度有大型的钢铁工业。它也因信息技术产业而闻名。

印度有许多节日和集市。在这个国家的某个地方，一年中的每一天都在庆祝节日。印度女士传统的服装是莎丽。你或许在印度的电影中看到过它们。

在印度有一些著名的观光胜地。泰姬陵是非常值得参观的。它是世界奇迹之一。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

C **You also want to write an introduction to an Asian country for the exchange students. Think of a country and make some notes of it. Then write the introduction. Use Millie's notes and article as a model.**

Useful expressions

…is a great country/wonderful place to visit.
It lies in ….
It is next to/near ….
Its capital city is ….
People in … speak ….
There are over … people there.
It is famous for ….
…is well worth a visit/worth visiting.
…is one of the wonders of the world.

Self-assessment

I have learnt	Details	Result
1. about two cities in China.		
2. to use the new words to talk about different countries.		
3. to use **it** as a pronoun and an impersonal pronoun. to use **it** to replace the real subject or object.		
4. about body language.		

Result: Perfect! Good! Not bad!
I need to spend more time on _____.

C 你也想为交换生们写一篇对一个亚洲国家的介绍。想一个国家，并做一些记录。然后写出这篇介绍。用米莉的记录和文章作为例子。

有用的表达

……是一个可以去参观的好国家/好地方。
它位于……
它紧靠/靠近……
它的首都城市是……
在……的人们讲……
那儿有超过……的人。
它以……而出名。
……非常值得参观。
……是世界奇迹之一。

自我评价

我已学会/了解	细节	结果
1. 关于中国的两个城市。		
2. 用生词谈论不同的国家。		
3. 把 it 作为一个代词和非人称代词来使用。 用 it 来代替真正的主语或宾语。		
4. 关于肢体语言。		

结果：棒极了！ 好！ 不错！
我需要花更多的时间在_____。

基德

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1 population /ˌpɒpjuˈleɪʃn/ *n.* 人口

考向一：population 直接作主语时意为“人口数”，这时谓语动词要用单数形式。表示“某地有多少人口”有两种表达方式：

(1) The population of + 某地 + be + 数词(该句型中 population 前用冠词 the。)

eg: **The population of** this city is more than 3 million.
这个城市的人口超过三百万人。

(2) 某地 + has a population of + 数词(该句型中 population 前用冠词 a。)

eg: Nigeria **has a population of** nearly 100 million.
尼日利亚有近 1 亿人口。

考向二：[易错点] 询问“某地有多少人口”要用“What …?”或“How large …?”提问，不用

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

how many 或 how much 等提问。

eg: **What's** the population of Germany? (= **How large** is the population of Germany?)
德国的人口是多少?

考向三:[易错点]表示人口"多"要用 large 或 great 修饰,表示人口"少"要用 small 修饰。

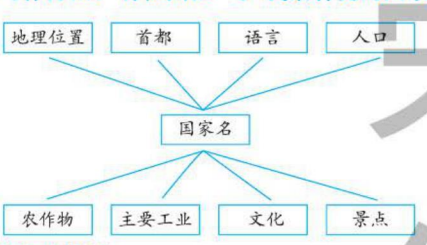
eg: The population of the USA is much **smaller** than that of China.
美国的人口比中国的人口少得多。

【考题在线】—Which country has the _____ population in the world?
—China. It's a little _____ than that of India. (黄冈)
A. most; most
B. biggest; bigger
C. more; most
D. bigger; biggest

考题在线答案
B

Ⅲ。写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

写作方法:"特征图法"写"我最喜爱的国家"



易错点提示

注意国家名、某国人以及语言之间的英文单词的区别,不能混淆。

参考词汇和句式

单词	over, population, lie
短语	lie in, communicate with, be famous for, be worth doing, capital city
句式	1. The population of... 2. I think ... is a great country to visit.

典例

请你根据提示,以 My favourite Asian country —Singapore 为题,写一篇文章,简单介绍一下新加坡,100 词左右。

Country(国家名)	Singapore
Location(地理位置)	in South East Asia
Capital city(首都)	Singapore
Languages(语言)	English and Chinese
Population(人口)	about 5 million
Crops(农作物)	rice and corn
Main industries(主要工业)	international trade famous for tourism
Culture(文化)	many festivals the orchid is the national flower
Attraction(景点)	Sentosa, Merlin Park, Universal Studios Singapore

【范文欣赏】

My favourite Asian country —Singapore

I think Singapore is a great country to visit. It lies in South East Asia. Its capital city is Singapore.

People in Singapore mainly speak English and Chinese, so it is not too difficult to communicate with the local people. The population of Singapore is about five million. Rice and corn are their main crops. Singapore has international trade. It is also famous for its tourism.

Singapore has many festivals. Its national flower is the orchid.

There are some famous attractions in Singapore. Sentosa, Merlin Park and the Universal Studios Singapore are well worth visiting.

【点评】

本文运用了"特征图法"写"我最喜爱的国家"。1. 开篇点题(特征图的中心);2. 介绍了特征图中的上下八个部分。

添彩点: I think ..., The population of ..., be famous for ..., be well worth doing ...是本单元的核心句型与短语,做到了学以致用,体现了新课标的理念。

"写作针对性训练"见单元过关测试书面表达

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见147页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示,拼写单词

1. _____(印度) is on the south of China.
2. Shanghai Science and _____(技术) Museum is a perfect place for children to visit.
3. So far, China is still the country with the largest _____(人口) in the world.
4. You can play football if your homework is _____(结束).
5. How lucky! She was _____(选择) to play the lead role in the new film directed by Zhang Yimou.

二、单项选择

6. —The little boy, along with his classmates, _____ for their brave action.
—I think we should learn from them.
A. were praised
B. was praised
C. have praised
D. has praised

7. The population of China _____ 1.3 billion. And it is becoming _____.

【导学号: 28374004】

A. is; more and more
B. is; larger and larger
C. are; more and more
D. are; larger and larger

8. Mr. Green _____ to sing an English song at the party and he sang well. (安徽)
A. was invited
B. invited
C. is invited
D. invites

9. —Doctor, what's wrong with me?
—_____ serious. You have just got a cold. (宿迁)
A. Something B. Nothing
C. Everything D. Anything

10. _____ April 1 China announced that it would build the Xiongan New Area in Hebei Province. (盐城)
A. On B. In
C. At D. To

三、重点知识浓缩

Welcome to Beijing!

The Palace Museum is in the _____[11] of the ancient city of Beijing. It is now used _____[12] a museum.

Next to the Palace Museum is Tian'anmen Square. It's the _____[13] city square in the world. You can watch the raising of the national _____[14] there.

The Summer Palace is in the north-west of Beijing. It is a large Chinese garden _____[15] in a natural landscape.

The Great Wall is over 6,000 kilometres long. The wall was first built over 2,000 years ago. It is one of the _____[16] of the world.

All about Guilin

Guilin is in southern China. All around it, mountains stand in different _____[17]. Many visitors come and visit it every year.

The Reed Flute Cave is in the north-west of the city. It's an _____[18] cave. The cave is _____[19] as the "Art Palace of Nature".

It's great fun to travel in Guilin by _____[20] or by boat.

荣德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Great people

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	⚠承上启下法(40 页)
写作方法	◇"三段论法"写"我最敬佩的名人"(60 页)
解题方法	1 分析句子结构法(48 页)　2 辨析法(41,47,48,55,60,137,138,147,148,149,150 页) 3 固定句式法(41,148 页)　4 固定短语法(34,59,148,150 页) 5 语法判定法(42,137,150 页)　6 句意理解法(34,35,137 页) 7 固定结构法(41 页)

学习目标梳理

单元话题	名人		
必背词汇	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1: Comic strip & Welcome to the unit	inventor *n.* 发明者 invent *vt.* 发明 fighter *n.* 斗士,战斗者;战斗机 invention *n.* 发明物;创意 European *n.* 欧洲人 Russian *n.* 俄罗斯人	hear of 听说 South African *n.* 南非人 all one's life 一生 the rights of ……的权利
	Period 2: Reading	pilot *n.* 飞行员 serve *vt.* & *vi.* 服役;服务,招待 test *vt.* 测试;检验 control *n.* 控制,支配 order *n.* 命令,指挥,要求 Pacific *adj.* 太平洋的 land *vt.* & *vi.* (使)着陆,(使)降落 step *n.* 一步　*vi.* 走,跨步 surface *n.* 表面;表层 further *adj.* 更多的,更进一步的 pride *n.* 骄傲;可引以为豪的人(或物)	become interested in 对……产生兴趣 at the age of 在……岁时 manage to do sth. 设法干某事 in space 在太空 on the/one's way back to … 在回……的路上 out of control 失去控制 cut … short 缩短 together with … 和……一起 the pride of ……的骄傲 make a lot of noise 发出许多噪音
	Period 3: Grammar	passage *n.* 章节,乐段	work on 从事 turn on 打开 make a great difference 作出很大的贡献 by hand 手工
	Period 4: Integrated skills & Study skills	mathematics (=maths) *n.* 数学 scientist *n.* 科学家 laboratory (=lab) *n.* 实验室 discovery *n.* 发现,发现物 unknown *adj.* 未知的;不出名的 widely *adv.* 广泛地,普遍地	get married 结婚 share sth. with sb. 和某人分享某物 be unknown to sb. 为某人所不知 believe it or not 信不信由你 push for 力推,力图争取

来德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

必背词汇	Period 5: Task	advantage *n.* 优势,有利条件 increase *vt.* 增加 development *n.* 发展	work as … 以……身份而工作 graduate from college 大学毕业 die of 死于 at present 现在 happen to 碰巧
句型	①动词不定式作定语 ②Who do you think is …? 你认为谁……? ③I've never heard of … 我从没有听说过…… ④Why do you admire her? 你为什么钦佩她?		
语法	时态		

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

I. 课文原文及译文

课文朗读 Comic strip

Comic strip

1. **Hobo**: Who do you think is the greatest person in history, Eddie?
2. **Eddie**: I think it's Paul Yum.
3. **Hobo**: Paul Yum? I've **never**[1] **heard of**[2] him. Who's he?
4. **Eddie**: He's an **inventor**[3]. He invented my favourite food.

Great people

Many people have changed the way we live. Mr Wu is asking his students to write about a famous person they admire.

Task

Write an article about a famous person you admire. Describe how he or she has changed the world.

Famous people

A **Mr Wu is showing the Class 1, Grade 9 students the pictures of some famous people. Help the students write the correct word under each picture.**

composer	explorer	inventor
president	scientist	writer

B **Mr Wu is telling the students about the famous people in Part A. Help the students match the names on the left with the correct information on the right. Write the letters in the blanks.**

1. Christopher Columbus
2. William Shakespeare
3. Qian Xuesen
4. Thomas Edison

漫 画

1. 霍波: 埃迪, 你认为史上最伟大的人是谁?
2. 埃迪: 我认为是保罗·亚姆。
3. 霍波: 保罗·亚姆? 我从未听说过他。 他是谁?
4. 埃迪: 他是一位发明家。 他发明了我最喜欢的食物。

伟人

许多人改变了我们的生活方式。吴老师正在要求他的学生们把他们钦佩的一位伟人写下来。

任务

写一篇关于你钦佩的一位名人的文章。描述一下他或她是如何改变世界的。

名人

A 吴老师正在向九年级一班的学生们展示一些名人的图片。 帮助这些学生将正确的单词写在每幅图片的下面。

作曲家	探险家	发明家
总统	科学家	作家

B 吴老师正在告诉学生们有关 A 部分中名人的情况。 帮助这些学生将左边的名人与右边的信息搭配起来。 将字母填在空白处。

1. 克里斯托弗·哥伦布
2. 威廉·莎士比亚
3. 钱学森
4. 托马斯·爱迪生

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

5. Nelson Mandela
6. Peter Tchaikovsky
a. Chinese, the pioneer of **China's**[4] space technology programme
b. **South African**[5], a **fighter**[6] for the rights of black Africans all his life
c. American, created over 1,000 inventions
d. Italian, one of the first **Europeans**[7] to discover America
e. Russian, a composer of classical music
f. English, a great writer of English literature

5. 内尔森 · 曼德拉
6. 彼得 · 柴可夫斯基
a. 中国人，中国航空技术方案的先驱
b. 南非人，一生为争取非洲黑人权利的斗士
c. 美国人，创造了1000多个发明
d. 意大利人，第一批发现美洲的欧洲人之一
e. 俄罗斯人，古典音乐的作曲家
f. 英国人，英国文学的伟大作家

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶[高频] never /ˈnevə(r)/ *adv.* 从不

考向：never是频度副词，意为“从不”，对其提问用how often。

eg:（遵义中考）There is lots of interesting work to do here, so I **never** feel bored.
这儿有许多有趣的工作可做，因此我从不感到无聊。

归纳 常见的频度副词：
always 一直 > usually 通常 > often 经常 > sometimes 有时 > seldom 很少 > never 从不

【考题在线1】—Your speech is wonderful.
—Thanks. But I'll _____ achieve that if you don't encourage me. （葫芦岛）
A. ever　　B. never
C. always　　D. sometimes

点拨：本题用句意理解法解题。考查副词辨析。句意：——你的演讲很棒。——谢谢。但是如果你不鼓励我，我绝不会成功。根据句意可知选never。

❷hear of 听说

考向：[辨析][易错点] hear的常用短语：

hear of 听说，得知；提起某事，直接指其对象。	I have **heard of** the song. 我曾听说过这首歌。
hear about 听到或得知关于某人或某事的消息，比hear of知道的内容更详细、具体。	I've just **heard about** his illness. 我刚听说他生病的事。
hear from 收到……的来信，后接人名或代词宾格。	（黄石中考）I look forward to **hearing from** you all. 我期待着收到你们所有人的来信。

【考题在线2】—收到妈妈的来信，她就立刻启程回家。（黄冈）
She will set off for home at once as soon as she _____ her mother. (hear)

点拨：本题用固定短语法解题。hear from sb. 收到某人的来信。as soon as引导的时间状语从句中，主句用一般将来时，从句要用一般现在时；从句的主语为she，所以动词要用第三人称单数形式。

❸[高频] inventor /ɪnˈventə(r)/ *n.* 发明者，发明家

考向一：inventor是由动词invent加名词词缀-or构成；表示“发明”时用invention。此类由“动词+or”构成的名词还有：visitor 参观者；actor 男演员；director 导演等。

eg: My uncle is an **inventor**.
我的叔叔是一位发明家。
Zhang Yimou is a very famous **director**.
张艺谋是一位非常著名的导演。
The computer is a great **invention**.
电脑是一项伟大的发明。


知识微课：invent与discover

考向二：[辨析] discover, create, invent与find：

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

discover 发现，指发现本来存在但没人知道的事物	Scientists around the world are working to **discover** a cure for AIDS. 全世界的科学家都在努力寻找治疗艾滋病的方法。
create 创造，指创造新的事物	Some people believe that God **created** the world. 有些人相信上帝创造了世界。
invent 发明，指通过研究制造出从前没有的东西	He always tries to **invent** something new. 他一直努力要发明新东西。
find 找到，发现，强调找到某物的结果，不强调过程	I think I'm lost; I can't **find** the bridge. 我想我是迷路了，我找不到那座桥了。

【考题在线3】根据句意及汉语提示拼写单词

Edison is one of the greatest _____ (发明家) in the world. (苏州)

【考题在线4】用所给词的适当形式填空

A number of useful _____ (invent), such as smartphones, have changed our lives. (鄂州)

【考题在线5】The telephone _____ by Alexander Graham Bell in 1876. (贵阳)

A. is invented
B. was invented
C. were invented

方法真题练：语法判定法

【考题在线6】The 17-year-old high school student is trying to _____ a robot which can think like a human. (济南)

A. discover B. organize
C. invent D. achieve

点拨：本题用**句意理解法**解题。考查动词的用法辨析。句意：那个17岁的中学生正试图发明一个能像人类一样思考的机器人。discover“发现”，指发现原本就存在的事物；organize“组织”；invent“发明”，指事物原来是不存在的；achieve“达到”。“能像人类一样思考的机器人”并不是本来就存在的事物，只能是发明出来的。

培养发明意识

雨衣的发明（invention）

18世纪，在苏格兰橡胶厂的麦金托什因生活窘迫，无力购买雨具，每逢雨天，只能冒雨上下班。一个雨天，他不小心将橡胶汁沾满衣裤，怎么也擦不掉，只好穿着这身脏衣服冒雨回家。麦金托什回到家却惊喜地发现，穿在里面的衣服一点儿也没有湿，他索性将橡胶汁涂满全身衣服。这就是世界上第一件胶布雨衣（raincoat）。

【素养行动】让我们从生活中汲取创新灵感（inspiration），在奇思妙想中激发创造思维，试着发明一项自己的作品。

【素养行动结果】勤于向生活学习，善于思考，培养发明意识。

❹[高频]名词所有格

考向一：名词所有格的构成：

A. 一般在名词后加's。如：Peter's desk 彼得的课桌

B. 以-s结尾的复数名词的所有格在词尾加'。如：Teachers' Day 教师节

C. 以非-s结尾的复数名词的所有格在词尾仍需要加's。如：Children's Day 儿童节

【考题在线7】“It depends on my _____ decision,” the mother said and looked at her two sons. (甘肃)

A. children B. children's
C. child D. child's

考向二：[易错点]表示两人共有时，用结构：A and B's；表示两人分别拥有时，用结构：A's and B's。如：Lucy and Lily's father 露西和莉莉的父亲；Lucy's and Lily's dresses 露西的连衣裙和莉莉的连衣裙

【考题在线8】—Who's the woman under the tree?
—She's _____ aunt. (郴州)【导学号：28374005】

A. Kelly and Joe's
B. Kelly's and Joe
C. Kelly's and Joe's

考向三：双重名词所有格构成：a/an + *n.* + of + 名词性物主代词。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

eg：Tom is **a friend of mine**.
汤姆是我的一位朋友。

⑤South African 南非人

考向一：South Africa，意为“南非”。

eg：Mandela comes from **South Africa**.
曼德拉来自南非。

考向二：Africa，意为“非洲”，而 African 则是“非洲人，非洲人的，非洲的”。

eg：（长春中考）As a volunteer, it's the sixth time for him to help the kids in **Africa**.
作为一名志愿者，这是他第六次帮助非洲的孩子们。

⑥fighter/ˈfaɪtə(r)/ *n.* 斗士、战斗者；战斗机

考向：fighter 是由 fight 后接-er 构成，是可数名词，其复数形式是 fighters。

eg：The little girl is a real **fighter**.
这个小女孩是一个真正的斗士。

拓展 一般动词后接-er 构成名词。如：writer，worker，teacher 等。

eg：Lu Xun is a famous **writer**.
鲁迅是一位著名的作家。

【考题在线 9】用所给词的适当形式填空：
My English _____（teach）is Miss Lane.（南宁）

⑦[高频]European/ˌjʊərəˈpiːən/ *n.* 欧洲人

考向一：European 以辅音音素开头，其前用不定冠词 a，而不用 an。

【考题在线 10】I have _____ European penfriend, and he likes playing _____ guitar.（来宾）
A. an; /　B. an; the　C. a; /　D. a; the

考向二：European 除表示“欧洲人”外，还可表示“欧洲的”，作形容词。

eg：France is a **European** country.
法国是一个欧洲的国家。

拓展 Russian 作名词，意为“俄罗斯人”，其复数形式是 Russians，还可表示“俄语”；作形容词，意为“俄罗斯的，俄罗斯人的”。

考题在线答案
1. B　2. hears from　3. inventors　4. inventions
5. B　6. C　7. B　8. A　9. teacher　10. D

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞（答案见 147 页）

一、根据句意及汉语提示拼写单词

1. Who is considered as a sturdy（坚定的）_____（斗士）for racial equality?
2. This is a South _____（非洲的）man.
3. Look! The girl on the _____（右边）of me is Millie.
4. The woman isn't Japanese. She's a _____（俄罗斯人）.
5. As a great _____（发明家），Thomas Edison made a difference to our life.（扬州）

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. On _____（child）Day, boys and girls are very happy.
7. A lot of scientists devote all their _____（life）to their careers.
8. As we all know, Mo Yan is famous as a _____（write）.
9. The computer is considered as one of the most important _____（invent）in the 20th century.
10. The UK is an old _____（Europe）country, where there are many palaces and castles.

三、单项选择

11. —Have you ever _____ Peter Tchaikovsky before?
—Yes. A Russian composer of classical music.
A. heard of　B. listened to
C. listened up　D. heard from

12. Christopher Columbus was _____ explorer from _____ European country.
A. a; an　B. an; an　C. a; a　D. an; a

13. —What is _____ brother?
—He is a policeman.（青海）
A. Jim's and Paul's　B. Jim and Paul
C. Jim and Paul's

14. —Have you ever been to Guilin?
—No, _____. I hope I can go there next year.（崇左）
A. always　B. sometimes　C. never　D. often

15. Basketball _____ by a Canadian doctor named James Naismith.（河池）
A. is invented　B. was invented
C. invented　D. invents

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

A The first man to walk on the Moon

Neil Armstrong (1930-2012) was the first man to walk on the Moon. Simon is now reading an article about the astronaut and his space travel. Here is the article.

课文朗读A

NEIL ARMSTRONG

Neil Armstrong was born on 5 August 1930 in Ohio, the USA. He became interested in flying when he took his first flight at the age of six. He **received**[1] his student pilot's licence when he was 16.

Armstrong **joined**[2] the navy in 1949 and served as a pilot for three years. In 1955, he became a test pilot. He flew over 1,100 hours and **tested**[3] all types of aircraft.

In 1962, he was **chosen**[4] to become an astronaut. In 1966, he went into space as command pilot of *Gemini 8*. He and David Scott **managed**[5] to join two spacecraft together for the first time in space. **However**[6], on their way back to the Earth, the spacecraft **began**[7] spinning **out of control**[8]. Armstrong received the **order**[9] to **cut** the flight **short**[10]. He successfully brought the spacecraft down into the western Pacific Ocean.

On 20 July 1969, Armstrong became the first man to walk on the Moon. **Together with**[11] Buzz Aldrin, he **landed**[12] the spacecraft *Apollo 11* on the Moon. He said the famous words "one small step for (a) man, one giant leap for mankind" as he stepped out onto the Moon's surface.

Armstrong and Aldrin walked on the Moon for about two and a half hours. They collected Moon rocks to take back to the Earth for **further**[13] research. When *Apollo 11* returned, the whole world was waiting to greet them. They were heroes.

Because of his excellent service, Neil Armstrong was presented with the Medal of Freedom, the highest award that a US citizen can receive. He was the **pride**[14] of the whole world.

B The most famous astronaut

B1 Simon has read the article about Neil Armstrong, but he does not know some of the words. Help him find out the meanings of the words. Circle the correct letters.

A 第一个登上月球的人

尼尔·阿姆斯特朗(1930-2012)是第一个登上月球的人。西蒙正在读一篇关于这位宇航员和他的太空之旅的文章。下面就是这篇文章。

尼尔·阿姆斯特朗

尼尔·阿姆斯特朗于1930年8月5日出生在美国俄亥俄州。当他6岁第一次乘坐飞机的时候，他就对飞行产生了兴趣。他16岁时就取得了学生飞行员执照。

阿姆斯特朗在1949年参加了海军，当了三年飞行员。1955年，他成了一名试飞员。他飞行了1100多个小时，并测试了各种类型的飞机。

1962年，他被选为一名宇航员。1966年，他作为"双子星8号"的飞行指挥进入太空。他和戴维·斯科特成功地将两个航天器在太空首次交会对接。然而，在他们返回地球的途中，宇宙飞船开始旋转，失去控制。阿姆斯特朗收到了缩短航程的命令。他成功地使宇宙飞船落入西太平洋。

1969年7月20日，阿姆斯特朗成为第一个登上月球的人。他与巴兹·奥尔德林一起将"阿波罗11号"降落在月球上。当他跨出去踏上月球表面的时候，他说了一句非常著名的话："对一个人来说这是一小步，但对整个人类来说却是一次巨大的飞跃。"

阿姆斯特朗和奥尔德林在月球上行走了大约两个半小时。他们采集了月球岩石带回地球做进一步研究。当"阿波罗11号"返回的时候，全世界的人在等着迎接他们。他们是英雄。

因为他的出色表现，尼尔·阿姆斯特朗被授予自由勋章——一个美国公民可得到的最高奖励。他是全世界的骄傲。

B 最著名的宇航员

B1 西蒙已经读了这篇关于尼尔·阿姆斯特朗的文章，但其中有些单词他不认识。帮助他弄清楚这些单词的意思。将正确的字母圈出来。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

1. A *licence* is _____.
a. some money
b. a type of power
c. a piece of paper that shows you are **allowed**[15] to do something
2. An *astronaut* _____.
a. draws maps
b. travels to space
c. travels to different countries
3. Something that is *spinning* is _____.
a. turning round and round quickly
b. going very slowly
c. making a lot of noise
4. A *leap* is _____.
a. a new place
b. a long or high jump
c. a walk
5. A *surface* is _____.
a. the inside of something
b. the bottom of something
c. the outside or top part of something
6. A *citizen* is a person who _____.
a. lives in a country and enjoys rights there
b. is kind and helpful
c. does something important

B2 Simon is working out a timeline for Neil Armstrong. Help him complete it.

Neil Armstrong

1930: born in (1)_____, the USA
1936: took his (2)_____
1946: received his student (3)_____
1949: joined (4)_____
1955: became (5)_____
1962: became (6)_____
1966: went into (7)_____ with David Scott
1969: became the first man to walk on (8)_____

B3 Simon is telling Millie about Neil Armstrong. Check if Simon remembers everything correctly. Write a T if a sentence is true or an F if it is false.

1. The *Gemini 8* flight was a great success.
2. *Gemini 8* landed in the western Pacific Ocean.
3. Three men from *Apollo 11* walked on the Moon together.
4. The astronauts took some Moon plants back to the Earth.
5. Neil Armstrong received the Medal of Citizen.

1. 执照是_____。
a. 一些钱
b. 一种力量
c. 一张表明你被允许做某事的纸

2. 宇航员_____。
a. 画地图
b. 去太空旅行
c. 去不同的国家旅行
3. 旋转的物体是_____。
a. 在快速地旋转
b. 在很慢地运行
c. 在发出许多噪音
4. 跳跃是_____。
a. 一个新地方
b. 一次跨度或高度很大的跳跃
c. 一次步行
5. 表面是_____。
a. 某物的内部
b. 某物的底部
c. 某物的外部或顶部
6. 公民是一个_____的人。
a. 住在一个国家，享受着那儿的权利
b. 善良的并且助人为乐
c. 做重要的事情

B2 西蒙在为尼尔 · 阿姆斯特朗做一条时间轴，帮助他完成这一时间轴。

尼尔 · 阿姆斯特朗
1930：出生在美国俄亥俄州
1936：首次乘坐飞机
1946：取得了学生飞行员执照
1949：加入海军
1955：成为一名试飞员
1962：成为一名宇航员
1966：与戴维 · 斯科特一起进入太空
1969：成为第一个登上月球的人

B3 西蒙正在告诉米莉有关尼尔 · 阿姆斯特朗的情况。检查一下西蒙是否每件事都记得正确。如果句子是正确的写“T”，错误的写“F”。

1. “双子星 8 号”的飞行非常成功。
2. “双子星 8 号”在西太平洋降落。
3. “阿波罗 11 号”的三个人一起在月球上行走。
4. 宇航员们将月球上的一些植物带回了地球。
5. 尼尔 · 阿姆斯特朗得到了市民勋章。

荣德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B4 **Millie is asking Simon some questions about Neil Armstrong. Help Simon answer her questions. Use the information on pages 22 and 23 to help you.**

1. When did Armstrong become interested in flying?
2. How old was Armstrong when he became an astronaut?
3. What did Armstrong do when the spacecraft was out of control during his first trip into space?
4. What was the first spacecraft to land on the Moon?
5. How long did Armstrong and Aldrin walk on the Moon?
6. What did Armstrong mean by his famous words "one small step for (a) man, one giant leap for mankind"?

B4 米莉正问西蒙一些有关尼尔·阿姆斯特朗的问题。帮助西蒙回答她的问题。用第 22 页和第 23 页中的信息来帮助你。

1. 阿姆斯特朗是什么时候对飞行感兴趣的?
2. 阿姆斯特朗成为宇航员时是多少岁?
3. 在他的第一次太空之旅中，当宇宙飞船失去控制的时候，阿姆斯特朗做了什么?
4. 第一个在月球上着陆的宇宙飞船是什么?
5. 阿姆斯特朗和奥尔德林在月球上走了多长时间?
6. 阿姆斯特朗著名的一句话"对一个人来说这是一小步，但对整个人类来说却是一次巨大的飞跃"的含义是什么?

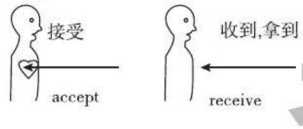
Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶[高频] receive /rɪˈsiːv/ *v.* **接到，收到**

考向：[辨析] receive 与 accept 的区别：

receive 意为"收到"，表示客观上收到	(泰安中考) Jack **received** many gifts from his friends on his twelfth birthday. 杰克在他十二岁生日时收到了很多来自他的朋友的礼物。
accept 意为"接受"，表示主观上接受	(安徽中考) You are brave enough to **accept** such a difficult job. 你足够勇敢去接受这么难的工作。

【图示如下】



速记小筏

一语辨异： He received a gift, but he didn't accept it.
他收到了一件礼物，但他没有接受。

❷join /dʒɔɪn/ *v.* **加入，参加**

考向一：join 指加入某个党派、团体组织等，成为其成员之一。表示"和某人一起做某事"，其结构为：join sb. in (doing) sth. 。

eg： I've **joined** the Music Club.
我加入了音乐俱乐部

考向二：[辨析] join in, take part in 与 attend：

join in 多指参加小规模的活动，如"球赛、游戏"等，常用于日常口语。	(蓬莱中考) The girl **joined in** the Character Spelling Contest and won the first prize. 这个女孩参加汉字听写大赛，获得了一等奖。
take part in 指参加会议或群众性活动等，着重说明句子主语参加该项活动并在活动中发挥作用。	We'll **take part in** the social practice during the summer vacation. 暑假期间我们将参加社会实践。
attend 是正式用语，指参加会议、婚礼、葬礼、典礼；去上课、上学、听报告等。	He'll **attend** an important meeting tomorrow. 他明天要参加一个重要的会议。

【考题在线 1】 —Jenny, I hear there will be an art club in our school. (温州)
—Wonderful! I can't wait to _____ it.
A. repeat B. forget
C. receive D. join

点拨： 考查动词词义辨析。句意：——珍妮，我听说我们的学校将有一个艺术俱乐部。——太好了！我迫不及待地想_____它。repeat 重复；forget 忘记；receive收到；join 参加。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

❸**test**/test/*vt.* **测试，检验** *n.* **测试，检验，考验**

考向一：test 作动词时，意为“测试，检验”。

eg：By doing so, you can **test** the strength of steel.
这样做，你可以试验一下钢的强度。

考向二：作名词时，test 表示单元测试或随堂小测验，而 exam 则表示期中或期末的考试。

eg：（宜宾中考）You'd better go over the **test** paper before handing it in.
你最好在交卷之前仔细检查一遍。

❹[高频]**choose**/tʃuːz/*v.* **选择，决定**

考向一：choose 是不规则动词，其过去式和过去分词分别为 chose，chosen。其用法有：choose to do sth. 选择干某事，choose sb. to do sth. 选择某人干某事。

eg：（嘉兴中考）Today some students **choose** to study abroad for further education.
现在一些学生选择去国外深造。

【考题在线 2】用所给词的适当形式填空：
At the start of this term, Lingling was _____ (choose) as our class monitor. （南宁）

点拨：句意：这学期开始时，玲玲被选为我们的班长。根据句意，Lingling 与 choose 之间存在被动关系，此题应用被动语态。

考向二：其名词形式是 choice，意为“选择”，固定结构：have no choice but to do sth.，意为“除了做某事别无选择”。

eg：I believe that he can make a wise **choice**.
我相信他能作出明智的选择。
She **has no choice but to** do it again.
她别无选择只能再做一遍。

❺**manage**/ˈmænɪdʒ/*vt.* & *vi.* **设法完成，管理**

考向一：[辨析] manage to do sth. 指设法做成（完成）某事，含有成功之意；try to do sth. 指争取做成某事，但不一定成功。

eg：He **managed to get** the work done with very little help.
在没有多少帮助的情况下，他设法完成了这项工作。
He **tried to get** the work done with very little help.
他争取在没有多少帮助的情况下完成这项工作。

考向二：其名词形式是 manager，意为“管理者，经理”。

【考题在线 3】—We can't enter the room. I can't find my key.
—Is it possible that you _____ it at home? （南京）
A. left　　B. fixed
C. managed　　D. designed

培养“行动”素养

人生之路遥远而迷茫（confused），前方是未知的，只有不断地探索尝试（try to do），踏出第一步，我们才有机会成功。戴维·托马斯是拥有 4300 家快餐店的温迪国际公司创始人，他回忆自己的童年：12 岁时，我在一家餐厅做招待。老板说：“孩子，只要你愿意努力尝试，你就能为我工作。”我记得我曾经尝试过自己一个晚上能接待多少客人，结果创下了 100 位的纪录。通过第一份工作，我认识到，只要你专心致志并努力工作，你就会成功（succeed）。

【素养行动】如果你有理想、有梦想，但缺乏自信，请勇敢地向前迈一步，敢于尝试，你一定会找到开启成功大门的钥匙。

【素养行动结果】培养勇于尝试、大胆探索、永不言弃的精神。只有勇于尝试，坚持不懈，才能有成功的那一天。

❻**承上启下法**：该词在此起着承上启下的作用。在写这类文章时，我们可以用 however 来引起下文，使文章条理清晰，结构严谨。

❼**begin**/bɪˈgɪn/*v.* **开始，启动**

考向一：begin 作动词，与 start 意思几乎一样，用法也一样：其后均可接 to do sth. 与 doing sth.，意思几乎一样。固定短语 begin with 与 start with 都意为“以……开始”。

eg：（杭州中考）Good morning, boys and girls. Let's **begin** our class.
孩子们，上午好！咱们开始上课吧！
This class **began with** a nice English song.
这节课以一首美妙的英文歌曲开始。

【考题在线 4】根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词：
When the little boy saw the dog playing wonderful tricks, he began to _____ (笑) loudly. （镇江）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨:本题用固定结构法解题。句意:当小男孩看到狗正在做精彩的把戏时,他开始大笑起来。begin to do sth. 开始做某事。

考向二:其名词形式是 beginning,意为"开始"。固定短语 in the beginning,意为"一开始",相当于 at the beginning。

8 out of control 失去控制,无法管理

考向一:此短语中的 control 是名词,其反义短语是 in control,意为"控制"。

eg:The lorry ran down the hill **out of control**.
卡车失去控制直往山下冲去。
Who's **in control** of the project?
谁是这个项目的负责人?

考向二:control 也可作动词,意为"控制",其现在分词是 controlling,过去式、过去分词均为 controlled。

【考题在线 5】用所给词的适当形式填空
Outgoing children prefer showing their feelings openly to _____ (control) them within themselves. (常州)

点拨:本题用固定句式法解题。题中的 to 为介词,后接动名词。prefer doing sth. to doing sth. 意为"喜欢做某事胜过做另一件事。"

培养"自我控制"素养

自我控制是一个人对自己的心理和行为的控制能力。经研究表明,社会中各个领域的领军人物都在自制力(self-control)、热忱(passion)、毅力(will)、自我激励以及处理人际关系方面有较高的能力。想要培养自我控制能力,可以为日常活动做计划表,抵制诱惑,拒绝懒惰。还可以控制思想,做事情十分专注,远离忧虑,驾驭自我情绪。

【素养行动】当同学们面对懒惰、诱惑时,应该控制时间、做事专注,有较强的自我约束力。

【素养行动结果】学会自我控制,学会生活。

9 order /ɔ:də(r)/ *n*. 命令,指挥,要求

eg:He gave **orders** that the work should be started. 他下令开始工作。

考向一:order 作名词,常构成:keep ... in order 使……有秩序,in order to 为了,out of order 有毛病,出故障

eg:(抚顺中考)**In order to** improve the environment, we are pulling/working together.
为了改善环境,我们正在通力合作。

【考题在线 6】Teachers encourage students to develop the habit of reading in order to _____. (昆明)
A. keep fresh in mind
B. be slow in action
C. laugh at others
D. complain about ages

点拨:本题用辨析法解题。句意:老师们鼓励学生养成读书的习惯,为的是_____。keep fresh in mind 保持头脑清楚;be slow in action 行动缓慢;laugh at others 嘲笑别人;complain about ages 抱怨年龄。

考向二:order 还可作动词,意为"命令,订购",常用结构:order sb. to do sth. 命令某人干某事。

eg:They have **ordered** 1,000 oil pumps from our factory.
他们已向我厂订购了 1000 台油泵。
The doctor **ordered** him to stay there.
医生嘱咐他留在那里。

10 cut ... short 缩短

eg:I will **cut** a long story **short**.
我就长话短说吧。

考向:cut 的其他常用短语:

cut down 砍倒,削减	They **cut down** that tree half an hour later. 半小时以后,他们砍倒了那棵树。
cut out 裁剪	Please **cut out** my overcoat according to this pattern. 请你照这个式样裁剪我这件大衣。
cut in 插嘴	Don't **cut in**! 不要插嘴!

11 together with 同……一起,连同

考向:主语后跟有 with, together with, along with, but, except, as well as, besides, including 等词语时,谓语应与前面的主语保持一致。

eg:Mary **together with** her parents often goes to the movies.
玛丽经常和她的父母一起去看电影。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

My brother, **as well as** I, likes playing basketball.
我哥哥和我都爱打篮球。

⑫**land**/lænd/ *vt.* & *vi.* （使）着陆，（使）降落，靠岸

eg: The ship **landed** safely in the end.
船最后平安靠岸了。

考向：land 除作动词外，还可作名词，意为“陆地”，固定短语 on land，意为“在陆地上”。

eg: The elephant is the biggest animal **on land**.
大象是陆地上最大的动物。

【考题在线 7】根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词
In 1969, Armstrong _____（着陆）the spacecraft *Apollo11* on the moon.
点拨：句意：1969 年，阿姆斯特朗将宇宙飞船“阿波罗 11 号”降落在月球上。由句中的时间状语可知，应用一般过去时态。

⑬[高频]**further**/ˈfɜːðə(r)/*adj.* 更多的，更进一步的

eg: Do you have any **further** questions?
你还有问题吗？

考向：further 是 far 的比较级。【注意】farther 与 further 的区别：
两者均可用来指实际的距离，即空间上的距离。但用于比喻意义上的距离或深度，如时间、程度和数量等，表示“更多，更进一步”，只能用 further。

eg: We cannot go any **farther/further** without a rest. 不休息一下的话我们就走不动了。
I may be able to give you some **further** information about it. 关于这个问题，我还可以给你一些更多的信息。

【考题在线 8】— Whose home is _____ from school, Alice's or Daisy's?
— Alice's, I think.（沈阳）
A. far　　B. farther
C. farthest　　D. the farthest
点拨：本题用语法判定法解题。考查形容词的比较级和最高级。句意：——谁的家离学校更远些，爱丽丝的家还是黛西的家？——我觉得是爱丽丝的家。因为只是两者之间的比较，所以用比较级。

⑭**pride**/praɪd/*n.* 骄傲；可引以为豪的人（或物）

考向一：pride 作名词，常用短语：the pride of 意为“……的自豪，……的骄傲”，take pride of 意为“以……而自豪”。

eg: The new car was **the pride of** the whole family. 这辆新汽车是全家人的骄傲。
She **takes** great **pride of** her children's success.
她为自己的孩子的成功感到无比骄傲。

考向二：pride 的形容词是 proud，意为“骄傲的，自豪的”。固定结构有：be proud of 后接名词或动名词；be proud to do sth.；be proud + that 从句。

eg: We **are proud of** our country.
我们为我们的国家而自豪。
He **is proud to** join the army.
他参军了，他感到自豪。
We **are proud that** we are Chinese.
我们为我们是中国人而自豪。

【考题在线 9】—More and more people come to visit Jingzhou Ancient City.
—That's true. It has become the _____ of Jingzhou.（荆州）
A. effort　　B. praise
C. courage　　D. pride
点拨：考查名词词义辨析。句意：——越来越多的人来参观荆州古城。——那是事实，它已经变成了荆州的_____。A 努力，成就；B 赞扬；C 勇气；D 骄傲。

⑮[高频]**allow**/əˈlaʊ/ *vt.* 允许

考向一：allow 作“允许”或“许可”讲，常搭用动词不定式短语作宾语补足语，即，allow sb. to do sth. 允许某人做某事。其被动结构是：sb. be allowed to do sth.，意为“某人被允许干某事”。

eg: You **are** not **allowed to** smoke here.
这里不许吸烟。
Please **allow** me **to** carry your bag.
请让我替你拿包。

考向二：allow 作“许可”，“允许”讲，可搭配动名词短语作宾语，即 allow doing sth.

eg: They **allowed smoking** in this room only.
他们只允许在这间屋子里抽烟。

【考题在线 10】—Don't smoke here, Dad. Smoking _____ in public places.
—Oh, sorry. I'll stop right now.
A. isn't allowed　　B. aren't allowed
C. doesn't allow

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨:本题考查被动语态的用法。句意:——不要在这里吸烟,爸爸。吸烟_____在公共场所。——哦,对不起。我立即停止。结合句意可知为被动语态;主语为Smoking,动名词作主语,谓语动词用单数形式。

考题在线答案

1. D 2. chosen
3. A 4. laugh
5. controlling
6. A 7. landed
8. B 9. D 10. A

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见147页)

一、根据句意及首字母或汉语提示,拼写单词

1. Flight 846 _____ (降落) safely ten minutes ago with 300 passengers.
2. We got to the cinema late and missed the _____(开始) of the film.
3. The girl r_____ many roses yesterday but she didn't accept them.
4. Our t_____ flight was to discover the faults in the new plane.
5. You can practise soccer by j_____ a sports club. (凉山)

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. —When is _____ (father) Day?
—On the third Sunday of June.
7. At this time yesterday, the woman together with her sons _____ (wait) for her husband at the station.
8. The great swimmer Sun Yang is the _____ (proud) of not only China, but also Asia.
9. The firemen _____ (control) the fire, so all of you are out of danger now.
10. It's easy for local people _____ (choose) various goods in Sunnyside Shopping Mall. (南京)

三、单项选择

11. We don't allow _____ in the lecture hall, so you are not allowed _____ here.

【导学号: 28374006】

A. smoking; smoking
B. to smoke; to smoke
C. smoking; to smoke
D. to smoke; smoking

12. Nineteen Taizhou dishes _____ into the book *Huaiyang Cuisine*(淮扬菜). (泰州)

A. chose B. choose
C. are chosen D. have chosen

13. New Year is coming. We should make resolutions _____ the beginning of the year. (贵阳)

A. in B. on C. at

14. He won in the story competition and his parents were very _____. (江西)

A. smart B. proud
C. sorry D. upset

15. Keep on. Don't stop. The _____ you climb, the _____ you will see. (云南)

A. highest; farthest
B. highly; farther
C. high; far
D. higher; farther

四、完成下列句子

16. 为了让我们学校更加美丽,我们打算在学校周围种植更多的树木和花草。(黄石)
We'll plant more trees and flowers around our school _____ to make it more beautiful.
17. 由于时间有限,他没有别的办法只能缩短了他的演讲。
He had no choice but _____ because of the limited time.
18. 他很勇敢,设法把那辆失控的轿车停了下来。
It was brave of him to _____.
19. 恶劣的气候使得他一开始未能把宇宙飞船成功地降落到月球上。
The bad weather _____
_____
on the Moon in the beginning.
20. 到目前为止,我已经用多种方法成功地算出那道数学题。
_____
_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Tenses

A Simple present and present continuous

Tense	Used for	Example
Simple present	a present state	John **lives** in New York.
	daily routine and habits	I always **go** to bed at 10 p. m.
	present actions that happen one after another	School **is** over and the students **go** home.
	actions set by a timetable or schedule	The talk show **starts** at 7 p. m.
Present continuous	actions that happen right now	Look! The reporter **is interviewing** the astronaut.
	actions that happen at the same time	Mum **is doing** the housework and Dad is **working on**[1] the computer.
	actions in a limited period of time	I **am working** on a history project this week.
	arrangements for the near future	I **am leaving** for Shanghai tonight.

TIP

We often use these words with the simple present tense.

always often usually sometimes

seldom[2] never every ...

TIP

We often use these words with the present continuous tense.

at the moment today now

right now Listen! Look!

时态

A 一般现在时与现在进行时

时态	用于	举例
一般现在时	现在的状况	约翰住在纽约。
	日常生活和习惯	我总是在晚上 10 点去睡觉。
	一个接着一个发生的现在的动作	放学了，学生们回家了。
	按照时间表或计划表发生的动作	访谈节目在晚上 7 点开始。
现在进行时	现在发生的动作	看！那位记者在采访这个宇航员。
	同时发生的动作	妈妈正在做家务，爸爸正在电脑上工作。
	有限的时间段里发生的动作	本周我正在做一个历史课题。
	不久的将来的安排	今晚我将去上海。

提示

我们经常用这些词与一般现在时连用。

总是 常常 通常 有时

很少 从不 每一 ……

提示

我们经常用这些词与现在进行时连用。

此刻 今天 现在

现在 听！ 看！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

We enjoy the modern life!

Millie is writing about what her family members are doing. Help her complete her article with the correct tenses of the verbs in brackets.

I (1) _____ (have) a day out with my classmates this Saturday, so I (2) _____ (need) a pair of trainers. Mum (3) _____ (shop) online for me now. She often (4) _____ (shop) online. Dad (5) _____ (search) for information on the Internet. He (6) _____ (visit) Japan next week. Grandpa (7) _____ (read) the newspaper and Grandma (8) _____ (watch) TV. I (9) _____ (want) to write an email to Wendy before I (10) _____ (go) to bed.

B Simple past and past continuous

Tense	Used for	Example
Simple past	actions that happened in the past	Simon **played** football yesterday.
	actions that happened one after another in the past	Simon **came** home, **turned on**[3] the computer and **checked** his email.
Past continuous	actions that were in progress at a certain time in the past	Yesterday at 4 p. m., Simon **was playing** football.
	actions that happened at the same time in the past	Simon **was playing** computer games while Millie **was watching** TV.
	actions that lasted for some time in the past	We **were having** a meeting from 9 a. m. to 11 a. m. yesterday.

TIP
We often use these words with the simple past tense.
yesterday ...ago in 1999
the other day last ...

TIP
We often use these words with the past continuous tense.
at this time yesterday from ...to ...last night

我们享受着现代生活!

米莉正在写关于她的家庭成员正在做的事。帮助她用括号里动词的正确时态完成她的文章。

本周六，我将与我的同班同学出去，因此我需要一双运动鞋。妈妈现在正在为我网上购物。她常常在网上购物。爸爸正在网上搜索信息。下周他将去日本。外祖父正在看报纸，外祖母正在看电视。在睡觉之前，我想写一封电子邮件给温迪。

B 一般过去时与过去进行时

时态	用于	举例
一般过去时	过去发生的动作	西蒙昨天踢足球了。
	过去一个接着一个发生的动作	西蒙回到家，打开电脑并检查他的电子邮件。
过去进行时	过去某个时刻正在进行的动作	昨天下午 4 点，西蒙正在踢足球。
	过去同时发生的动作	当米莉正在看电视的时候，西蒙正在玩电脑游戏。
	过去持续一段时间的动作	昨天早上从 9 点到 11 点，我们正在开会。

提示
我们经常用这些词与一般过去时连用。
昨天 前天 ……以前 上…… 在 1999 年

提示
我们经常用这些词与过去进行时连用。
昨天的这个时候 昨晚从……到……

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

What did you do last night?

Simon and his friends are talking about what they did after dinner last night. Complete their conversation with the correct tenses of the verbs in brackets.

Simon: I (1) _____ (watch) a wonderful football match from 7 p. m. to 8:30 p. m. yesterday. My favourite team (2) _____ (**win**④) the match.

Millie: I (3) _____ (write) an email to Wendy at 7 p. m. yesterday. She (4) _____ (send) me an email last week.

Sandy: I (5) _____ (**practise**⑤) playing the piano the whole night. I (6) _____ (take) part in a competition this morning.

Peter: Last night, I (7) _____ (find) a website about travelling in space. I (8) _____ (read) passages on the website while you (9) _____ (play) the piano, Sandy.

Daniel: I (10) _____ (talk) to Aunt Jane on the phone at 7: 30 yesterday evening. She (11) _____ (call) me the day before yesterday, but I (12) _____ (be not) at home then.

C Simple past and present perfect

Tense	Used for	Example
Simple past	actions that happened in the past	I **bought** a new bicycle yesterday.
	actions that happened at a certain time in the past	Kitty **wrote** an email to Linda an hour ago.
Present perfect	emphasizing the result of a past action	I **have bought** a new bicycle, so I can ride to school now.
	telling how many times an action has happened till now	She **has been** to the USA twice.

TIP
We often use these words with the present perfect tense.
just already up to now until/till now
ever (not) yet so far recently

昨晚你做了什么？

西蒙和他的朋友们正在谈论昨天晚饭后他们做了什么。用括号里动词的正确时态完成他们的对话。

西蒙：昨天晚上从7点到8点半我正在看一场精彩的足球比赛。我最喜爱的球队赢了比赛。

米莉：昨天晚上7点我正在给温迪写电子邮件。她上周给我发了一封电子邮件。

桑迪：整个晚上我都在练习弹钢琴。今天早上我参加了一场比赛。

彼得：昨天晚上，我发现了一个关于太空旅行的网站。桑迪，当你正在弹钢琴的时候，我正在网站上看文章。

丹尼尔：昨天晚上7点半，我正在跟简阿姨通电话。她前天给我打了电话，但那时我不在家。

C 一般过去时与现在完成时

时态	用于	举例
一般过去时	过去发生的动作	昨天我买了一辆新自行车。
	过去某个特定时间发生的动作	基蒂一小时前给琳达写了封邮件。
现在完成时	强调过去某个动作产生的结果	我已经买了一辆新自行车，因此我现在可以骑车去学校了。
	讲述一个动作直到现在发生了多少次	她已经去美国两次了。

提示
我们经常用这些词与现在完成时连用。
刚刚 已经 到目前为止 直到现在
曾经 还（没有） 迄今为止 最近

未经许可 请勿翻印

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Great inventions

Millie is writing about some modern inventions that have changed the way we live. Help her choose the correct words in brackets to complete her article.

Many modern inventions (1) _____ (made/have made) a great difference in our life. They (2) _____ (changed/have changed) the way we live.

In ancient times, people (3) _____ (used/have used) salt to help them keep fish or meat for a longer time. Fresh food would **go bad**[6] in summer in a few hours. The invention of the fridge (4) _____ (solved/has solved) this problem.

In the past, people (5) _____ (washed/have washed) their clothes **by hand**[7]. It (6) _____ (was/has been) tiring, and it (7) _____ (took/has taken) a lot of time. With the invention of the washing machine, people (8) _____ (had/have had) more time to relax.

In the old days, people (9) _____ (travelled/have travelled) by ship. Now planes (10) _____ (made/have made) journeys more comfortable.

伟大的发明

米莉正在写关于一些改变我们生活方式的现代发明。帮助她选用括号中的正确单词完成她的文章。

许多现代发明已经对我们的生活产生了巨大的影响。它们已经改变了我们的生活方式。

在古代，人们用盐帮助他们使鱼或肉保存更长的时间。新鲜的食物在夏天几个小时后就会变坏。冰箱的发明已经解决了这个问题。

在过去，人们用手洗衣服。这是很累人的，并且要花很多时间。有了洗衣机这项发明，人们有更多的时间来放松。

在过去，人们乘船旅行。现在飞机使旅行更加舒服。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶work on 从事

eg: She is **working on** a new dictionary.
她一直在忙着编写一本新词典。

考向：work 的其他常用短语：

work out 算出，解决	We can find a way to **work out** this problem. 我们可以找到解决这个问题的方法。
work as 从事某种职业	My father **works as** a teacher. 我父亲是一位教师。

【考题在线 1】—Miss Li, could you please help me _____ this math problem?
—OK. Let me try. (威海)
A. look up B. work out
C. set up

点拨：本题用**辨析法**解题。句意：——李老师，你能帮我_____这道数学题吗？——好的，让我试一试。look up 查询；work out 算出；set up 设立。

❷seldom /ˈseldəm/ *adv.* 很少，不常

考向一：seldom 是频度副词，相当于 not often，对其提问用 how often。

eg: (临沂中考)—I hate vegetables. I **seldom** eat them.
我厌恶蔬菜，我很少吃它们。
—But they are good for your health! You should eat them every day.
但它们对你的健康有益！你应该每天都吃。

考向二：[易错点] seldom 表示否定，在反意疑问句中，附加部分应该用肯定形式。

eg: Amy **seldom** walks to school, does she?
埃米很少步行上学，是吗？

【考题在线 2】—Would you like some green tea?
—No, thanks. I _____ drink green tea. It hurts my stomach. (南京)【导学号：28374007】
A. almost B. seldom
C. only D. still

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨：考查副词辨析。句意：——你要些绿茶吗？——不，谢谢。我很少喝绿茶，它伤我的胃。根据句意可知选很少 seldom。

③turn on 打开

eg：（重庆中考）It's getting dark. Would you please **turn on** the light?
天变暗了，请你开灯好吗？

考向：[重点] turn on 打开；turn off 关掉；turn up 调高；turn down 调低

eg：Do you mind if I **turn off** the light?
我把灯关掉你介意吗？

【考题在线 3】 How noisy it is! Could you please _____ the CD player a little?（兰州）

A. turn off　　B. turn down
C. turn on　　D. turn up

点拨：本题用辨析法解题。考查动词短语辨析。句意：太吵了！你能把 CD 调低一点吗？因为 a little，所以选调低，而不是关掉。

④win /wɪn/ *v.* 赢，获胜

考向一：[辨析] win 与 beat：

win 的宾语往往是奖品、奖学金、名誉、财产、战争或运动等等。	（重庆中考）Do you think our basketball team will **win** the match? 你认为我们篮球队会赢得比赛吗？
beat 的宾语通常是比赛、竞争中的对手或战争中的敌人。	We **beat** their team by 5:4. 我们以五比四战胜他们队。 I **beat** John at chess yesterday. 昨天我和约翰下棋并赢了他。

速记小筏

一语辨异：Tom beat Henry and won the match. 汤姆战胜了亨利，赢得了比赛。

考向二：win 是动词，其名词形式是 winner，意为“获胜者”。

eg：The boy is a **winner**. 这个男孩是胜利者。

【考题在线 4】 根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词
In the famous competition, _____（获胜者）always get very good prizes.（青岛）

点拨：本题用分析句子结构法解题。考查名词。句意为：在这场著名的比赛中，获胜者总是得到很好的奖品。由句中的 get 可知，其主语应为名词的复数形式。

⑤practise /ˈpræktɪs/ *v.* 训练，操练

eg：The girl **practises** playing the piano every day.
这个女孩每天练习弹钢琴。

归纳 初中英语中其后只接 *v.*-ing 的动词有：finish，avoid，allow，practise，enjoy，mind，risk，keep，consider，suggest 等。

特色土方法

巧学妙记带-ing 的词语

考虑建议盼原谅，承认推迟没得想。
避免错过继续练，否认完成就欣赏。
禁止想象才冒险，不禁介意准逃亡。
consider，suggest/advise，look forward to
admit，delay/put off
avoid，miss，keep/keep on，practise
deny，finish，enjoy/appreciate
forbid，imagine，risk
can't help，mind，allow/permit，escape

eg：（福州中考）You should try your best to **avoid** making mistakes while taking an important exam.
你应该在参加重要考试的时候，尽你最大的努力避免犯错误。

【考题在线 5】 —Where is Tom?
—He is practicing _____ English _____ he can win the speed competition.（乌鲁木齐）

A. to speak；in order to
B. speaking；so that
C. speaking；in order to
D. to speak；so that

点拨：考查非谓语动词和目的状语从句的用法。句意：——汤姆在哪儿？——为了能在这次速度竞赛中获胜，他在练习说英语。practice doing sth. 练习做某事；so that 为了，引导目的状语从句。

⑥go bad 变坏

eg：Milk **goes bad** quickly if it is not refrigerated.
牛奶如果不冷藏很快就会变质。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考向：[辨析]表示“变得、成为”的 come 与 go：

come 用作系动词时大都与好的方面的转化相联系。	Things will **come** right in the end. 事情最后总会变好的。 My dream has **come** true. 我的梦想已经实现了。
go 用作系动词时大都与坏的方面的转化相联系。	It would be a tragedy if anything **went** wrong. 如果出了什么差错，那就是个悲剧。 Fruit quickly **goes** rotten in hot weather. 在热天里，水果很快就会腐烂。

⑦by hand 手工

考向一：by hand 表示一种抽象的手段，是无形的（注意其中没用冠词或其他限定词）。

eg：The letter was written **by hand.**
这封信是用手写的。

考向二：hand 作名词，还需要掌握以下短语：give sb. a hand 帮助某人，shake hands 握手，shake hands with sb. 和某人握手，in hand 在手头。

eg：Chinese like **shaking hands with** others.
中国人喜欢与别人握手。
I have not enough materials **in hand** at present.
目前我手头没有足够的资料。

考向三：hand 作动词，常用短语：hand out 分发，hand in 上交。

eg：The teacher had the monitor **hand out** the papers.
老师让班长分发试卷。
I **handed** the watch **in** to the police.
我把那块手表交给了警察。

考题在线答案
1. B 2. B 3. B 4. winners 5. B

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

时态的用法

知识微课：时态标志词

考点1：一般现在时和现在进行时

时态	一般现在时	现在进行时
概念不同	表示现阶段习惯性、周期性、反复或经常发生的动作，或者用于描述客观真理。	表示现在正在发生的动作，在现阶段持续发生的动作或存在的状态。
用法不同	一般现在时表示现在的状态。	现在进行时表示正在发生的动作或状态。
	一般现在时表示一个动作接着一个动作，用来描述连续性的事件。	现在进行时表示几个动作同时进行。
	一般现在时可以用来描述日常生活和习惯。	现在进行时可以表示在特定时间段里所发生的动作。
用法不同	一般现在时表示按照时间表或计划表所做的事情。	现在进行时表示即将发生的动作或安排。
时间状语不同	与一般现在时连用的词语有：always, usually, often, sometimes, seldom, never, on Sunday, every day, every year, once a month, three times a year 等。	与现在进行时连用的词语有：at the moment, now, right now 等。另外，动词如 look, listen 等用于句首，以唤起对方注意时，也常与现在进行时连用。

eg：（菏泽中考）—Hi, Wang Ning! How's the weather in Heze **now**?
喂，王宁！现在菏泽的天气怎么样？
—It is terrible. It is raining all the morning.
很糟。整个上午一直在下雨。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 1】—Cathy, can you answer the door? I _____ the room.
—I'm coming, Mum. （安徽）
A. clean　　B. cleaned
C. have cleaned　　D. am cleaning
点拨：考查动词的时态。句意：——凯西，你能去开门吗？我在打扫房间。——我马上来，妈妈。由语境可知，此时妈妈正在打扫房间，因此用现在进行时。

考点 2：一般过去时与过去进行时

时态	一般过去时	过去进行时
概念不同	表示在过去发生的动作或存在的状态。	表示过去的某个时刻正在发生的动作、过去同一时间同时发生的动作或在过去某个时间段内持续发生的动作或存在的状态。
用法不同	一般过去时表示过去发生的动作或者存在的状态。	过去进行时强调过去某个时刻发生的动作。
	一般过去时可以表示过去发生的一系列连续的动作。	过去进行时表示过去同一时间里同时发生的动作。
	/	过去进行时还可以表示过去的某个时间段内持续发生的动作或存在的状态。
时间状语不同	与一般过去时连用的词语有：yesterday, the day before yesterday, last year, two months ago 等。	与过去进行时连用的词语有：at this time yesterday, from … to … last night 等。

eg：（泰安中考）—Our classmates went to a concert **yesterday afternoon.**
我们的同学昨天下午去参加音乐会了。
—What a pity! I was doing my homework.
真遗憾！我当时在做作业。

【考题在线 2】My brother _____ the Indian film *Dangal* when I phoned him yesterday. （盐城）
A. watches　　B. has watched
C. is watching　　D. was watching
点拨：考查时态的用法。句意为：昨天我给弟弟打电话时他正在看印度电影《摔跤吧！爸爸》。根据 phoned 可知前后都是过去时，又由句意推测是“正在看……”，因此用过去进行时。

考点 3：一般过去时与现在完成时

时态	一般过去时	现在完成时
概念不同	一般过去时表示在过去发生的动作或存在的状态。	现在完成时描述一个发生在过去，并一直延续到现在，或者可能还要延续的动作。
用法不同	一般过去时表示过去发生的动作或者存在的状态。	现在完成时强调过去的动作所产生的结果或影响。
	一般过去时表示过去某个特定时间发生的动作。	现在完成时表示过去某个动作直到现在已经发生了多少次。

eg：（天津中考）—When did you come here?
你何时来这儿的？
—**Two days ago**. 两天前。

【考题在线 3】I am surprised at the new look of my hometown, for it _____ a lot over the years.
A. changed　　B. changes
C. will change　　D. has changed
点拨：考查动词的时态。句意为：我很惊讶家乡的新面貌。这些年它变了很多。由句意可知是强调对现在的影响，即“变了很多”，故选 D。

考题在线答案
1. D　2. D　3. D

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见148页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. What a pity! Our food _____ (go) bad. What should we do?
2. It's important for us to practice _____ (read) English every day.
3. The boy seldom eats fruit and vegetables, _____ (do) he?
4. —Has your friend completed his design?
   —Not yet. He _____ (work on) it last night.
5. The smile on that _____ (win) face showed how he enjoyed the race.

二、单项选择

6. He promised that his team _____ the first in this competition.
   A. will win B. would win
   C. won D. has won
7. Lin Tao practices _____ English every day. (淄博)
   A. speaking B. speak
   C. speaks D. to speak
8. Life is a journey with trouble, but with care and wisdom you can _____ any problem you face. (常州)
   A. work out B. hand out
   C. find out D. put out
9. Pick up your pen and draw your own invention. Maybe it will be _____ a real product one day! (临沂)
   A. turned on B. turned down
   C. turned off D. turned into
10. The apple has gone bad and it has a _____ smell. (丹东)
    A. good B. same
    C. terrible D. delicious

三、语法专练

11. Sherlock Homes asked the suspect what he _____ when the murder took place. (盐城)
    A. was doing B. has done
    C. is doing D. would do
12. —You have a nice car.
    —Thank you. I _____ it for less than one month. (扬州)
    A. bought B. have bought
    C. had D. have had
13. Mom, someone _____. Please pick up the phone. (绵阳)
    A. has called B. is calling
    C. will call D. was calling
14. —What's your father?
    —He is a doctor. He _____ in a local hospital. (绵阳)
    A. worked B. has worked
    C. works D. will work
15. —Hey, Jenny. Let's go home together.
    —Just a moment. I _____ an e-mail. (武威)
    A. send B. sent
    C. am sending D. have sent
16. — Look at the blue sky! The rain _____.
    — Let's go out for a walk. (泰州)
    A. stops B. will stop
    C. has stopped D. had stopped
17. —Where is Joan?
    —She _____ a novel in her study. (苏州)
    A. has read B. reads
    C. will read D. is reading
18. —You look worried. What's wrong?
    —I went for a job interview yesterday and I _____ the result. (扬州)
    A. waited for B. was waiting for
    C. am waiting for D. will wait for
19. I _____ the book club last week and I _____ two books already.
    A. join; read B. joined; read
    C. joined; have read D. joined; has read
20. —Jack, why didn't you answer my phone at 3:00 yesterday afternoon?
    —Oh, sorry. I _____ a concert at that time. (十堰)
    A. attend B. attended
    C. was attending D. will attend
21. Don't disturb Allen now. He _____ for the *Spelling Bee* competition. (广东)
    A. prepares B. prepared
    C. is preparing D. will prepare
22. —Did you see Tom yesterday?
    —No. I _____ him for a long time. (铜仁)
    A. didn't see B. hasn't seen
    C. saw D. haven't seen

英德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

23. Paula is pleased that she _____ her lost watch. （河北）
A. finds　　B. found
C. has found　　D. will find

24. I heard a new song on the radio. I _____ high and low in the music store, but I can't find the song. （河南）
A. search
B. have searched
C. am searching
D. will search

25. Many city people _____ their bikes to work every day. （陕西）
A. ride　　B. will ride
C. rode　　D. have ridden

四、完成下列句子

26. 看！王先生正在操纵机器。
Look! Mr Wang _____ the machine.

27. 明天请把作业本交上来。 （天津）
Please _____ your homework tomorrow.

28. 离开房间时记得关灯。 （兰州）
Remember to _____ the lights when you leave the room.

29. 鱼肉在热天气里很快就坏了。
Fish soon _____ in hot weather.

30. 没有人能计算出人类何时移居到火星。
No one can _____ Mars.

五、句型转换

31. The lazy boy spread his things all over the floor.（改为一般疑问句） （南通）
_____ the lazy boy _____ his things all over the floor?

32. Mark is watching TV now.（改为否定句） （重庆A）
Mark _____ _____ TV now.

33. My cousin bought a new bike last week.（改为同义句） （孝感）
My cousin has _____ a new bike _____ last week.

34. I want to go somewhere quiet for my vacation.（改为一般疑问句） （乌鲁木齐）
_____ you want to go _____ quiet for your vacation?

35. Ben has finished the project on reusing natural resources.（改为否定句） （安顺）
Ben _____ _____ the project on reusing natural resources.

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A Marie Curie

A1 Millie wants to give a presentation on Marie Curie. Look at the following information on this great scientist. Help Millie complete her notes with as much information as you can.

Marie Curie (1867 – 1934)

- born in the city of Warsaw, Poland
- moved to Paris, France when she was 24
- studied Mathematics and Physics at a university
- married a French scientist called Pierre Curie in 1895
- discovered radium in their laboratory in 1898
- won the Nobel Prize twice during her lifetime
- died at the age of 67

综合技能

A 玛丽 · 居里

A1 米莉想对玛丽 · 居里做个介绍。看下面关于这位伟大科学家的信息。用尽可能多的信息来帮助米莉完成她的记录。

玛丽 · 居里（1867—1934）

- 出生于波兰华沙
- 24 岁时，她移居法国巴黎
- 在一所大学学习数学和物理
- 1895 年嫁给了一位叫皮埃尔 · 居里的法国科学家
- 1898 年在他们的实验室里发现了镭
- 她一生获得两次诺贝尔奖
- 67 岁时去世

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Marie Curie—a great scientist

Name: Marie Curie

Date of birth: 7 November (1) _____

Place of birth: (2) _____, Poland

Family: she was (3) _____ of five children

Parents: father was a (4) _____ professor;
mother was a (5) _____ teacher

High school: finished at the age of (6) _____

Work: worked as a (7) _____

Moved to: (8) _____, France in 1891

At university: studied (9) _____ and (10) _____

Married to: Pierre Curie, a (11) _____ scientist, in 1895

Famous for: the **discovery**[1] of (12) _____

Won the Nobel Prize for: (13) _____ in 1903

Husband's death: Pierre Curie died in a (14) _____ in (15) _____

Won the Nobel Prize for: (16) _____ in 1911

Date of death: (17) _____ 1934, aged (18) _____

A2 Millie has found a recording about Marie Curie. Listen to it carefully and help her complete the rest of her notes in Part A1.

课文听力A2 音频及材料

A3 Millie is practising her presentation. However, she has forgotten some of the information. Help Millie complete her sentences. Use the information in Part A1 to help you.

I think Marie Curie is one of the greatest scientists in history! She was from (1) _____. When she was 24, she went to (2) _____ to study (3) _____ and (4) _____ at a university. There she met Pierre Curie, a (5) _____ scientist. They **got married**[2] in (6) _____. The couple won the (7) _____ in 1903 for the discovery of (8) _____. That was not the end of the story. In (9) _____, Marie Curie won her second Nobel Prize, but sadly, Pierre was not there to share the joy with her—he died in a traffic accident in (10) _____.

B Speak up: Why do you admire her?

Millie and Simon are talking about some famous people. Work in pairs and talk about the famous people you admire. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

Millie: Who do you think is the greatest person in history?

Simon: Neil Armstrong! I admire him the most.

Millie: Oh, he was the first man to walk on the Moon.

Simon: Yes. It was brave of him to go to a place that was unknown to humans at that time. What about you? Do you admire anybody?

玛丽·居里——一位伟大的科学家

姓名：玛丽·居里

出生日期：1867 年 11 月 7 日

出生地：波兰华沙

家庭情况：她是五个孩子中最小的

父母：父亲是一位自然科学教授；母亲是一位音乐老师

中学经历：16 岁时中学毕业

工作经历：做过教师

移居到：1891 年，法国巴黎

大学经历：学习数学和物理

嫁给：皮埃尔·居里，一个法国的科学家，在 1895 年

因……而著名：镭的发现

因……而获诺贝尔奖：1903 年物理学

丈夫的去世：皮埃尔·居里于 1906 年死于交通事故

因……而获诺贝尔奖：1911 年化学奖

逝世日期：1934 年 7 月 4 日，享年 67 岁

A2 米莉找到了一段有关玛丽·居里的录音。仔细听录音并帮助她完成 A1 部分中剩余的记录。

A3 米莉正在练习她的介绍。但是，其中有些信息她忘记了。帮助米莉完成句子。用 A1 部分中的信息帮助你。

我认为玛丽·居里是史上最伟大的科学家之一！她来自波兰。24 岁时，她去巴黎，在一所大学学习数学和物理。在那儿她遇到了皮埃尔·居里，一位法国的科学家。他们于 1895 年结婚。1903 年因为镭的发现这对夫妇赢得了诺贝尔物理学奖。但这不是故事的最终结局。在 1911 年，玛丽·居里第二次获得了诺贝尔奖，但悲哀的是，皮埃尔却不能与她分享这一喜悦——他于 1906 年因一场车祸去世。

B 大声说：你为什么钦佩她？

米莉和西蒙正在谈论一些名人。结对练习，谈论你钦佩的名人。用下面的对话作为示例。

米莉：你认为谁是史上最伟大的人？

西蒙：尼尔·阿姆斯特朗！我最钦佩他。

米莉：哦，他是第一个登上月球的人。

西蒙：是的。他很勇敢，到一个当时人类未知的地方去。你呢？你有钦佩的人吗？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Millie: Yes. I admire Marie Curie.
Simon: Why do you admire her?
Millie: Because she won the Nobel Prize twice. She also **pushed for**[3] the use of X-ray machines, which are now **widely**[4] used in hospitals.

TIP
You may use the information about different famous people in this unit.
You can also search for more information on the Internet or in the library.

Study skills

Formal and informal language

When we speak or write, we can use formal or informal language. We use formal language with our teachers or unfamiliar people. However, when we speak or write to our friends, we use informal language.

Greetings such as *Hi* and *Hello* are informal language. Other greetings like *Dear Mr/Mrs/Ms ...*, *Ladies* and *gentlemen* are formal language.

Endings such as *Lots of love* and *Yours* can be used only in informal letters or emails.

Idioms such as *have a big mouth* and *in the soup* are informal language.

Abbreviations such as *esp.* and *Dec.* are often used in informal writing.

Contractions such as *we'll*, *he'd* and *can't* are often used in informal writing or when we talk to our friends.

Kitty is writing to J. K. Rowling, the British writer, to tell her something about Harry Potter. Help Kitty check the language she is using and improve it if necessary.

Hi!

I think you'll laugh when you read this letter. Believe it or not, there's a real Harry Potter in the world. It's said that it's a lot of trouble being Harry Potter, esp. when you're a 78-yr-old man and you happen to share the name of a world-famous boy with magic powers.

The real Harry Potter often gets phone calls from both children and TV stations. "The kids want to know if I'm Harry Potter," he says with a smile. "I tell them I've been Harry Potter for nearly 80 years!"

However, the real Harry Potter says the Harry Potter series isn't his cup of tea, and he doesn't care if he's famous or not.

Love,
Kitty

米莉：有，我钦佩玛丽 · 居里。
西蒙：你为什么钦佩她呢？
米莉：因为她两次获得诺贝尔奖。她还推动了X光设备的使用，这种设备现在已在医院广泛使用。

提示
你可以使用本单元中不同名人的信息。
你也可以在网上或图书馆里查找更多的信息。

学习技巧

正式和非正式语言

当我们说话或写作时，我们可以用正式或非正式的语言。我们与老师或陌生人交流时用正式语言。然而，当我们与朋友谈话或给朋友写信时，我们用非正式语言。

像 Hi 和 Hello 这样的问候语是非正式语言。其他问候语像 Dear Mr/Mrs/Ms ... 和 Ladies and gentlemen 是正式的语言。

像 Lots of love 和 Yours 这样的结束语只能用在非正式的信件或电子邮件中。

像 have a big mouth 和 in the soup 这样的习语是非正式的语言。

像 esp. 和 Dec. 这样的缩写词常常用在非正式的书面语中。

像 we'll, he'd 和 can't 这样的缩写常常用在非正式的书面语或当我们与朋友交谈时。

基蒂正在写信给英国作家乔安妮 · 凯瑟琳 · 罗琳，告诉她关于哈利 · 波特的一些事情。帮助基蒂检查她所使用的语言，如果有必要请改进一下。

你好！

我想当你看到这封信的时候，你会笑吧。信不信由你，这个世界上有一位真正的哈利 · 波特。据说当哈利 · 波特有许多麻烦，尤其当你是一位78岁的老人，恰好与一个具有魔法力量的世界著名的男孩的名字一样。

这个真正的哈利 · 波特经常接到孩子们和电视台的电话。"孩子们想知道我是不是哈利 · 波特，"他带着微笑说。"我告诉他们我是哈利 · 波特已经将近80年了！"

可是，这位真正的哈利 · 波特说《哈利 · 波特》系列小说不是他所喜爱的，他并不介意他是否出名。

爱你的人，
基蒂

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶discovery /dɪˈskʌvəri/ *n.* 发现；发现物

考向：discovery 作“发现；发觉”讲时，既可作可数名词，也可作不可数名词。discovery 作“被发现的事物”讲时，是可数名词。discover 是动词，意为“发现”。

eg: New scientific **discoveries** are being made every day.
每天都有新的科学发现。

【考题在线 1】 In the future, humans _____ (发现) more secrets of nature. (青岛改编)

点拨：句意为：在将来，人类将发现更多的自然界的秘密。由 in the future 可知，本句用一般将来时。

❷get married 结婚

考向一：get married 强调动作，是瞬间性的，而 be married 强调状态是延续性的。

eg: My uncle and aunt **got married** last year. So they **have been married** for a year.
我的叔叔和婶婶去年结婚的，因此他们已经结婚一年了。

【考题在线 2】 My grandparents _____ for over 60 years and they love each other very much. (宿迁)【导学号：28374008】

A. have been married
B. got married
C. were married
D. have got married

点拨：考查动词时态辨析。句意：我祖父母结婚 60 多年了，他们非常相爱。根据 for over 60 years 可知用现在完成时，排除 B、C 项；动词 marry 与动词短语 get married 是非延续性概念，不能与表示时间段的状语连用，故排除 D 项。

考向二：表示“嫁或娶某人”用 marry sb；表示“把 A 嫁给 B”用 marry A to B，其被动式是 be married to …。

eg: (三明中考) Alice **married** Tom last year, so Tom is her husband.
爱丽丝与汤姆去年结婚了，因此汤姆是她的丈夫。

了解中外婚礼文化的不同

西方的婚礼是属于浪漫型（romantic type）的，一般在教堂由牧师（priest）主持婚礼。新娘的礼服一般为白色，新郎穿黑色的礼服。新人们认为只有在安静祥和的环境中才能得到上帝的保佑和祝福。中国的婚礼则以红色为主，新娘的传统衣着也是一身红装。在中国越是嘈杂越被认为热闹，新人们才能得到更多人的祝福。随着时代的变迁，越来越多的年轻人在接受中西合璧式（combination of Chinese and Western elements）的婚礼。

【素养行动】以后参加婚礼时，请认真感悟婚礼文化。

【素养行动结果】了解中西方婚礼文化，培养国际视野。

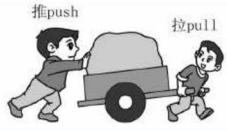
❸push for 力推，力图争取，强烈要求

eg: You're lucky now, so go ahead and **push for** what you want.
你现在很幸运，朝自己所渴望的争取吧。

考向：[易错点] push 与 pull 是一对反义词。push 是推，pull 是拉。

eg: We **pushed** and **pushed** but the piano wouldn't move.
我们推了又推，但钢琴一动不动。

速记小筏



【考题在线 3】 The government should _____ the use of new types of energy to make a greener world.

A. push in　　B. push for
C. put out　　D. put up

点拨：本题用辨析法解答。句意：政府应该_____对新型能源的使用，以创造一个更绿色的世界。push in 插队，加塞儿；push for 力推；put out 扑灭；put up 搭建，竖立。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

④**widely** /ˈwaɪdli/ *adv.* 广泛地

考向：[辨析] wide 与 widely：

wide 用作副词主要表示“张大”“睁大”到最大程度，侧重指物体从一边到另一边的距离（联系其形容词用法），通常与 open，apart 等连用。	The door was **wide** open. 门四敞大开。 He stood there with his legs **wide** apart. 他站在那儿，两腿叉开。
widely 则主要表示距离远、范围大、地域广等。	He has traveled **widely**. 他在许多地方旅行过。

【考题在线 4】根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词

Gas is now _____（普遍地）used for cooking and heating. （滨州）

点拨：考查副词的用法。句意：天然气被普遍地用来做饭和供暖。分析句子成分可知此处应该用副词，widely 意为“广泛地，普遍地”。

考题在线答案

1. will discover
2. A
3. B
4. widely

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 （答案见 149 页）

一、根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词

1. As we all know, the _____（发现）of America was made by Columbus.
2. Reading is important, for it can open up an _____（未知的）world to us. （兰州）
3. My parents have lived in Yangzhou since they got _____（结婚）.
4. My best friend's dream is to become a great _____（科学家）in the future.
5. Computers are _____（广泛地）used in different fields. （贵港）

二、单项选择

6. China Dream is a great way to gather people together and _____ the fast development of our own country.
   A. try out for
   B. fit for
   C. push for
   D. cheer for
7. —Peng Liyuan is _____ Chinese people as a beautiful and popular singer.
   —And now she is also the First Lady in China. （咸阳）
   A. known as
   B. proud of
   C. famous for
   D. well-known to
8. She _____ for ten years and now she has a lovely daughter. （白银）
   A. married
   B. has been married
   C. got married
   D. has got married
9. —Do you know _____ The Belt and Road Forum（“一带一路”高峰论坛）began?
   —On May 14th, 2017. （连云港）
   A. that　　B. when
   C. if　　D. where
10. Yesterday was my birthday. My friend sent me a CD _____ is made by Han Geng.
    A. who　　B. what
    C. which　　D. whom

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Task

A great person

A Amy wants to write about Yuan Longping, a rice scientist. Here is the information she has found.

Yuan Longping — Father of Hybrid Rice

Name: Yuan Longping

Title: a rice scientist, a member of the Academy of Engineering

Date of birth: 7 September 1930

Major events: 1953: worked as a teacher in an agriculture school after graduating from college

1960: saw people die of hunger, so began research into hybrid rice

1964: **happened to**[1] find a natural hybrid rice plant that had many **advantages**[2] over others

1975: developed a new type of hybrid rice plant, which produced 20% more rice per unit than other common kinds

1979: this new type of hybrid rice was introduced into the USA

At present[3]: over 100 countries in Asia, Africa and America have grown hybrid rice

Contribution: his achievements have **increased**[4] rice production by 20%—30%, and in some places even more

Why I admire him: has spent all his life on the research and **development**[5] of better rice plants; has solved the problem of hunger for many people

B Amy is writing her article. Help her complete it. Use the information in Part A on page 32 to help you.

I think Yuan Longping, a rice scientist and a member of the Chinese Academy of Engineering, is one of the greatest people that have ever lived.

He was born on (1) _____. In 1953, he began working as a (2) _____ in an agriculture school after he graduated from college. In 1960, he saw people die of (3) _____, so he began research into hybrid rice. In 1964, he happened to find a natural hybrid rice plant that had many (4) _____ over others. After nearly ten years of hard work, he and his team finally developed a (5) _____ of hybrid rice

任务

一个伟大的人

A 埃米想写关于袁隆平，一位水稻科学家的情况。下面是她已找到的信息。

袁隆平——杂交水稻之父

姓名：袁隆平

职位：水稻科学家、工程院院士

出生日期：1930 年 9 月 7 日

主要经历：1953 年：大学毕业后在一所农业学校当老师

1960 年：看到人们死于饥饿，因此开始研究杂交水稻

1964 年：碰巧发现一种天然的比其他有许多优点的杂交水稻植物

1975 年：研制出一种新型的杂交水稻植物，每亩比其他普通品种要多收获 20% 的稻谷

1979 年：这种新型的杂交水稻被引入美国

目前：亚洲、非洲和美洲的 100 多个国家已经种植杂交水稻

贡献：他的成就已经使水稻产量增收 20%—30%，在一些地方甚至更多

我为什么钦佩他：倾尽一生于更优良水稻植物的研究和发展；已经为许多人解决了饥饿问题

B 埃米正在写她的文章。帮助她完成她的文章。用 32 页 A 部分的信息帮助你。

我认为水稻科学家及中国工程院院士袁隆平是有史以来最伟大的人之一。

他出生于 1930 年 9 月 7 日。1953 年，大学毕业后，他在一所农业学校开始当老师。1960 年，他看到有人死于饥饿，因此他开始研究杂交水稻。1964 年，他碰巧发现一种天然的比其他有许多优点的杂交水稻植物。经过近 10 年的努力工作之后，他和他的团队终于研制出一种新型的杂交水稻植物，

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

plant, which produced (6)_____ per unit than other common kinds. In 1979, this new type of hybrid rice was introduced into (7)_____. At present, over 100 countries in Asia, Africa and America have grown hybrid rice. Because of his achievements, (8)_____ has been increased by 20%—30%, and in some places even more. He is considered the (9)"_____".

Yuan Longping has spent all his life on the research and development of (10)_____. He has solved (11)_____ for many people. That is why I admire him so much.

每亩比其他普通品种的要多收获20%的稻谷。1979年，这种新型的杂交水稻被引入美国。目前，亚洲、非洲和美洲的100多个国家已经种植杂交水稻。因为他的成就，水稻产量已经上涨了20%—30%，在一些地方甚至更多。他被认为是"杂交水稻之父"。

袁隆平毕生用于更优良水稻植物的研究和发展。他已经为许多人解决了饥饿问题。这就是我如此钦佩他的原因。

C Now prepare your own article. Look for information using the Internet, books or magazines. Remember to make some notes before writing your article.

C 现在，准备你自己的文章。利用因特网、书籍或杂志寻找信息。在你写文章之前，记住要做些笔记。

Self-assessment

I have learnt	Details	Result
1 about a famous astronaut.		
2. to use the new words to talk about great people.		
3. to use the different tenses correctly.		
4. about formal and informal language.		

Result: Perfect! Good! Not bad!
I need to spend more time on _____.

自我评价

我已学会/了解	细节	结果
1. 关于一位著名的宇航员		
2. 用新词谈论伟人。		
3. 正确使用不同的时态。		
4. 关于正式和非正式语言。		

结果：棒极了！ 好！ 不错！
我需要花更多的时间在_____。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶happen to 碰巧

考向一：happen to 意为"碰巧"，构成句型：sb. happen(s) to do sth. 或 sb. happen(s) to be ...。

eg: If you **happen to see** him, please give him my regards.
如果你碰巧见到他，请代我向他致意。
Amy **happened to be** at home at that time.
那个时候，埃米碰巧在家里。

考向二：固定句型 What happened to sb.? 表示"某人发生什么事了?"。

eg: What happened to Amy just now?
刚才埃米发生什么事了？
(兰州中考) He hasn't come yet. **What** do you think has **happened to** him?
他还没有来，你认为他怎么了？

考向三：[难点][辨析] take place 与 happen：

take place 常指"(某事)按计划进行或按计划发生。	Great changes have **taken place** in China since 1978. 自从1978年以来，中国发生了很大的变化。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

happen 常指具体事件的发生，特别指那些偶然的或未能预见的“发生”。	New things are **happening** all around us. 新生事物正在我们的周围发生。

特色土方法

巧记“发生”的 happen 与 take place

happen 和 take place，相同又不同，
泛指“发生”表相同，细分又不同，
有计划、有预谋用 take place，
突然发生、不可预见的只用 happen。

[注意] 表示“发生”的 happen 与 take place 均没有被动语态。

【考题在线 1】 别做白日梦了！别指望你会碰巧引起导演的注意。
Stop daydreaming! Never expect that you'll _____. （无锡）

点拨：本题用固定短语法解题。考查两个固定短语：表示“碰巧”用 happen to do；表示“吸引某人的注意”用 catch one's attention。

❷advantage /əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ/ *n.* **优势，有利条件**

考向一：advantage 是可数名词，常用 big，great 等形容词修饰。其复数形式是 advantages。

eg：For a goalkeeper, it's a great **advantage** to have big hands. 对于守门员来说，有一双大手是很大的优势。

【考题在线 2】 根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词
Being tall gives him an _____ （优势） over the other basketball players. （南通）

考向二：advantage 的反义词是 disadvantage，意为“劣势，不利条件”，表示“一项不利条件”用 a disadvantage。

eg：My lack of practical experience was a **disadvantage**. 我缺少实际经验是个不利条件。

❸at present 现在

考向一：at present 意为“现在，目前”，相当于 now 或 at the moment。

eg：We don't need any more **at present**.
现在我们不再需要什么了。

考向二：present 作名词，意为“礼物”；作形容词，意为“出席”；作动词，意为“提出，赠送，呈现”。

eg：This is a birthday **present**.
这是一件生日礼物。
A number of local personalities were **present** at the meeting.
许多当地名人出席了会议。
He **presented** quite a new view of the affair.
他对那件事提出了相当新的看法。

❹increase /ɪn'kri:s/ *vt.* **增加**

eg：Wide reading will **increase** your vocabulary.
博览群书会增加你的词汇量。

考向一：[辨析] increase by 与 increase to：

“increase by + 倍数或百分数”，表示“增加了……倍或百分之……”。	The population of this town has **increased by** 5 percent. 这个镇的人口增长了 5%。
“increase to + 具体的增长后的数字”，表示“增加到了……”。	The population of our country has **increased to** 1.3 billion. 我们国家的人口已增长到了 13 亿。

eg：（眉山中考）I think reading more can help you **increase** a sense of language.
我认为多读书可以帮你培养语感。

考向二：[辨析] increase 与 add：

increase 主要指自身数量、重量、价值、程度、力量等增加，多用于不可触知的事物。	We had better **increase** the amount. 我们最好把数量再增加一些。
add 是指将某物加在另一物上，使之在数量、体积、重要性等方面有所增加。	If the tea is too strong, **add** some hot water to it. 如果茶太浓，加点开水。

速记小筏

一语辨异：I increased the amount of water to be added during cooking.
烧饭时我增加了该加的水量。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线3】完成下列句子：
如果在牛奶里加点蜂蜜，品尝起来会非常美味。
If you _____ some honey to the milk, it will _____ very delicious. （烟台）

【考题在线4】—The price of food, drinks, clothes _____ so quickly these years.
—Oh, no, but I don't think so. （荆门）
A. develops
B. raises
C. improves
D. increases

点拨：本题用辨析法解题。考查动词词义辨析。句意：——这几年，食物、饮品、衣服的价格_____。——哦，不，但我不这样认为。develop 发展；raise 升起；improve发展，提高；increase 增长。根据下句可推测上句句意是价格上涨。

5 development /dɪˈveləpmənt/ *n.* 发展
eg: The **development** of industry and agriculture needs careful planning.
工农业的发展需要周密的计划。

【考题在线5】Nowadays schools should care for the full _____ of a student's talents. （黔南州）
A. satisfaction　B. development
C. communication　D. preparation

拓展 develop 作动词，意为“发展，开发”。developed 为形容词，意为“发达的”。developing意为“发展中的”。
eg: （遂宁中考）Teenagers should try to **develop** themselves and never let their parents down. 青少年应该努力提升自我，不要让父母失望。

考题在线答案
1. happen to catch the director's attention
2. advantage　3. add; taste　4. D　5. B

Ⅲ. 写作书案　夺取中考写作20分

写作方法：“三段论法”写“我最敬佩的名人”

我最敬佩的名人	介绍	点出“我”敬佩的名人是谁
	主体	介绍该名人的详细内容
	结论	写“我”钦佩此人的原因及感想或收获

易错点提示
注意正确表达名人的国籍、称呼、简历、成就以及自己敬佩的原因。

参考词汇和句式

单词与短语	one of the …graduate from, marry, be famous for, admire, learn from
句式	1. I think the greatest person in China/the world is … 2. He/She was born on/in … 3. He/She devoted his/her lifetime to … 4. …was a hard-working/generous/helpful … person. 5. That is why I admire him/her so much.

典例
请你根据提示，以 A great person 为题，写一篇 80 词左右的短文。

- **姓名**：查尔斯·罗伯特·达尔文（Charles Robert Darwin）
- **出生地及日期**：1809 年 2 月 12 日，英国，什鲁斯伯里斯顿（Shrewsbury）
- **去世日期**：1882 年 4 月 19 日
- **毕业学校**：剑桥大学（Cambridge University）
- **主要生平事迹**：
  1839 年：与 Emma 结婚
  1859 年：发表《物种起源》（*The Origin of Species*）
  以对生物学（biology）的巨大贡献闻名于世
  进化论（theory of evolution）的奠基人

【范文欣赏】

A great person

I think Charles Robert Darwin is one of the greatest persons in the world.

He came from Shrewsbury, the UK. He was born on 12th February 1809. And he died on 19th April 1882. He graduated from Cambridge University. He got married to Emma in 1839. In 1859, he published *The Origin of Species*. He is famous for his devotion to biology, and he is the founder of the theory of evolution.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

I admire him because he had the courage to believe that there is no god. What I learned from him is that we should depend on ourselves.

【点评】

本文引用了"三段论法"写"我最敬佩的名人"。1. 开篇点题(点出"我"钦佩的名人是谁);2. 主体部分(介绍该名人的详细内容);3. 结论(写"我"钦佩此人的原因及感想或收获)。

添彩点:1. 运用了一个固定结构:one of the + 形容词最高级 + 复数名词。

2. 运用了四个比较高级的短语:be born, get married to, be famous for 以及 depend on。



"写作针对性训练"见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见150页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示,拼写单词

1. With the _____ (发展) of modern medicine, more and more diseases can be cured.
2. His achievements have _____ (增加) rice production by 20%.
3. His rich experience is a great _____ (优势) over the others in his office.
4. We know there are lots of _____ (劣势) of living on Mars. So we won't move out of the Earth to Mars.
5. What can I get him for a birthday _____ (礼物)?

二、单项选择

6. Yuan Longping has devoted all his life _____ the research and the _____ of the rice plants.
   A. on; development B. to; development
   C. to; developing D. on; developing
7. More details _____ to the plan to ensure its execution yesterday night.
   A. add B. adding
   C. are added D. were added
8. —There are a lot of _____ of bike riding.
   —I agree. It's good for the environment and it saves money.
   (宜昌)【导学号:28374009】
   A. instructions B. instruments
   C. advantages D. products
9. It is necessary for everyone to _____ a good habit of reading. (济宁)
   A. enjoy B. choose
   C. develop D. accept
10. You will never guess _____. (西宁)
    A. who am I waiting for
    B. what has happened
    C. how can she help me
    D. where did I go

三、完成下列句子

11. 现在,越来越多的学生喜欢学英语了。
    _____, more and more students like to learn English.
12. 随着科学的发展,计算机将得到更广泛的应用。
    _____, computers will be used more widely.
13. 尽管你比同班同学在英语上有优势,你也不能掉以轻心。
    _____ in English, but you can't treat it lightly.
14. 上周我们学校举行了经典名著阅读比赛。(黄冈)
    Last week the classic reading competition _____ in our school. (take)
15. 碰巧我读过那个故事,所以我能告诉他们事实真相。(荆州)
    I _____ the story, so I can tell them the truth. (happen)

四、重点知识浓缩

Neil Armstrong is the first man to walk on the Moon. He took his first _____[16] at six and received his _____[17] licence at 16. In 1949, Neil joined the navy and _____[18] as a pilot. He was chosen to be an astronaut in 1962. Four years later, he _____[19] to join two spacecrafts together in space.

Then the big day came. On 20th July 1969, he _____[20] *Apollo 11* on the Moon together with Aldrin. Neil said the famous words "one small _____[21] for(a) man, one giant leap for mankind" on the Moon. They became _____[22] after they returned with many Moon rocks. Neil was _____[23] with the Medal of Freedom, the _____[24] award that a US citizen can receive because of his excellent _____[25].

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Project 1

课文原文及译文

A display of cultures around the world

The Class 1, Grade 9 students have made a wall display to show different cultures around the world. They made information sheets about the culture of each country. Then they put the sheets around a world map on the wall and gave group presentations. Your class wants to do the same thing.

A Planning and preparing

1. Put a world map on the display wall in the classroom. The whole class should work together to draw the map, or you can buy one.
2. Work in groups of four. Each group must make an information sheet about a different country.
3. Think about what you can include in the information sheet to show the culture of the country you have chosen. Exchange ideas with your group members and write them down on a piece of paper.
4. Find some information about the things your group would like to include in the information sheet. Look for information on the Internet or in the library.
5. If you need help, the following questions may give you some ideas.

- What is the capital city of the country?
- What does the country's national flag look like?
- What languages are spoken in the country?
- What is the country famous for?
- What kind of crops does the country grow?
- What are the customs and beliefs in the country?
- Are there any famous people in the history of the country?
- What are the people famous for? What have they achieved?

世界各地的文化展示

九年级一班的学生举办了一期墙报来展示世界各地不同的文化。他们就每个国家的文化制作了资料卡。然后他们把这些卡放在墙上一幅世界地图的周围，并作小组讲解。你们班也想这么做。

A 计划与准备

1. 在教室的展览墙上贴一幅世界地图。全班同学应一起画一幅或买一幅世界地图。
2. 四人一组。每一组必须为不同国家制作一张资料卡。
3. 想一下资料卡中要包括哪些内容来展示你所选择的国家的文化。与你的小组成员交换意见，然后把它们写在一张纸上。
4. 搜索一些你们小组需要放在资料卡上的信息。在互联网上或去图书馆查找资料。
5. 如果你需要帮助，下面的问题可能会给你一些思路。

- 这个国家的首都在哪座城市?
- 这个国家的国旗是什么样子的?
- 在这个国家说哪种语言?
- 这个国家因什么而闻名?
- 这个国家种植什么作物?
- 这个国家有什么风俗和信仰?
- 在这个国家有什么历史名人吗?
- 这些人因何而出名？他们取得了什么成就?

基德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B Tips for making your wall display

How to make the map

- If you draw the map, just draw the outline of the continents and some major countries with a pencil first so that it is easy to make corrections later on. Do not draw anything too detailed.
- Stick or draw flags of the countries on the map.
- Draw a compass at the bottom of your map and label the directions.

How to make the information sheet

- Read through your ideas and information carefully.
- Make a plan before you start writing—the information sheet must be large enough for the whole class to see during your presentation.
- After writing the draft, check for spelling mistakes, especially the names of the countries, places and famous people.
- Stick the pictures of the places and people you are going to talk about on your information sheet.
- Draw graphs and charts to show interesting facts and to make comparisons.

C Tips for your presentation

- The groups take turns to present their work.
- Use the map to show where the countries are.
- After the presentation, display all the information sheets on the wall around the map. Draw lines to join the sheets with the countries on the map.

B 制作墙报的提示

如何制作地图

- 如果你画地图，只要先用铅笔画出各大洲及一些主要国家的轮廓，以便接下来能很容易地进行修改。不要画太细节的事物。
- 在地图上贴上或画上这些国家的国旗。
- 在地图的下方画一个指南针，并标出方向。

如何制作资料卡

- 将你所有的设想及资料仔细读一遍。
- 在你开始写之前，先制订一个计划——资料卡必须要足够大，能让全班同学在你陈述的过程中看得清楚。
- 写完草稿后，检查其中的拼写错误，尤其是国家的名称、地名及名人的名字。
- 将你要提及的地点和人物的图片贴在你的资料卡上。
- 画一些图表来展示一些趣事，并进行对比。

C 作陈述的提示

- 各小组轮流展示他们的作品。
- 用地图来展示那些国家在哪里。
- 陈述以后，将所有的资料卡放在墙上的地图周围。用线将资料卡与地图上的国家连起来。

基德英语

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Robots

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	⚠寻找中心句法(73 页)
写作方法	①"三段论法"写"小故事"(87 页)
解题方法	1语境法(87 页)　2辨析法(67,71,72,83,86,139,150,151 页) 3题眼法(77 页)　4固定搭配法(71,72,73,77,83,86,87,140,151 页) 5语法判定法(67,73,77,83,150 页)　6句意理解法(66,73,139,140 页) 7情景交际法(83,151 页)　8排除法(150 页) 9主谓一致法(66 页)

学习目标梳理

单元话题		亚洲	
必背词汇	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1: Comic strip & Welcome to the unit	robot *n.* 机器人 post *vt.* <英>邮寄 = <美> mail brain *n.* 大脑 whatever *pron.* 任何,一切事物	post sth. for sb. 为某人寄某物 of course 当然 put out 扑灭 in any way 以任何方式
	Period 2: Reading	order *vt.* 订购 smoothly *adv.* 平整地;顺利地 satisfy *vt.* 满足,使……满意 need *n.* 需要的事物;欲望 properly *adv.* 正确地,适当地 complete *adj.* 完全的,彻底的 mess *n.* 乱七八糟 lay *vt.* 放,搁 store *vt.* 储藏,存储 coin *n.* 硬币　bill *n.* 账单 private *adj.* 私人的 paper *n.* 文件,证明 spread *vt.* & *vi.* (使)散开;扩散 wheel *n.* 轮子,车轮	too ...to 太……而不能 so that 以便　as well 也 look as good as new 看起来几乎像新的一样 tidy up 收拾妥,整理好 in general 总体来说,大体上 a few 几个 go wrong 出现问题 no longer 不再 make mistakes 犯错 in a mess 杂乱不堪 knock over 把……撞翻 what to do with sth. 怎样处理某物 in the end 最后
	Period 3: Grammar	unsure *adj.* 不确定,没把握	be busy with sth. 忙于干某事 go on a business trip to ... 到……出差 take medicine 服药 go up and down stairs 上下楼梯
	Period 4: Integrated skills & Study skills	customer *n.* 消费者,顾客 hold *vi.* 等待,不挂断 through *adv.* (电话)接通	for free 免费 in order to 为了 put through 给……接通

英德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

必背词汇	Period 5: Task &Self-assessment	satisfied *adj.* 满意的,满足的 completely *adv.* 完全地 regret *vt.* & *vi.* 后悔;遗憾 product *n.* 产品,成果	be satisfied with 对……满意 first of all 首先 at most 最多 at least 最少 up to standard 合格 expect sb. to do sth. 期盼某人干某事 regret doing sth. 后悔做某事
句型	①宾语从句 ②sb. is too + *adj.* + to do sth. 某人太……而不能……。 ③I have to buy a robot so that I can have more free time. 我得买一台机器人,以便我能有更多的业余时间。 ④It seemed that … 似乎是…… ⑤ I regret having bought a robot like this. 我后悔买了像这样的机器人。 ⑥We look forward to hearing from you soon. 我们期盼不久收到你的来信。		
语法	简单句和复合句之间的转换(一)		

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

课文朗读 Comic strip

1. **Hobo**: What are you doing, Eddie?
   Eddie: I'm writing a letter.
2. **Eddie**: You're too lazy. I'm complaining about you to the robot shop.
   Hobo: Oh dear! I can **explain**[1]!
3. **Eddie**: No, Hobo. It's too late. **Post**[2] this for me.
   Hobo: All right, Eddie.
4. **Hobo**: Eddie, I don't know when I'll post the letter for you.

Complaining about your robot

In the future, people would have their own robots. However, robots might have problems. If your robot had problems, what would you do?

Task

Write a letter to complain about your robot or a reply to a complaint letter.

How could robots help us?

A Do you know how robots could help us? Match each phrase with the correct picture.

课文朗读B

a. help with homework
b. explore outer space
c. do dangerous jobs
d. help with housework

漫 画

1. 霍波:你在干什么,埃迪?
   埃迪:我正在写信。
2. 埃迪:你太懒了。我在向机器人商店投诉你。
   霍波:噢,天啊!我可以解释的!
3. 埃迪:不必了,霍波。太迟了。给我把这封信寄了。
   霍波:好的,埃迪。
4. 霍波:埃迪,我不知道我将何时把这封信给你寄出去。

投诉你的机器人

将来,人们将会拥有他们自己的机器人。然而,机器人也许会有问题。假如你的机器人有问题,你将做什么呢?

任务

写封信投诉你的机器人或者回复投诉信。

机器人能怎样帮助我们?

A 你知道机器人能怎样帮助我们吗?将每个短语与正确的图片搭配起来。

a. 帮助做家庭作业
b. 探索太空
c. 做危险的工作
d. 帮助做家务

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B **Amy is asking Daniel how robots could help us in our daily lives. Work in pairs and talk about your ideas. Use the conversation below as a model.**

Amy: Would robots have brains in the future, Daniel?
Daniel: Yes, they would. So they could do **whatever**❸ they're asked to.
Amy: That sounds useful. How could robots help us?
Daniel: They could do dangerous jobs like **putting out**❹ fires or working on high buildings.
Amy: That's great! Could robots help you and me in any way?
Daniel: Of course. They could help us with our homework.
Amy: Wow! I'd like to have **one**❺!

B 埃米正在问丹尼尔机器人在我们的日常生活中能怎样帮助我们。结对练习并谈论你们的观点。用下面的对话作为示例。

埃米：将来机器人会有大脑吗，丹尼尔？
丹尼尔：是的，他们会有。因此他们能做被要求的任何事情。
埃米：听起来很有用。机器人能怎样帮助我们呢？
丹尼尔：他们能做危险的工作，像扑灭火灾或在高层建筑上工作。
埃米：那太棒了！机器人能以任何方式帮助你和我吗？
丹尼尔：当然了。他们能帮助我们做家庭作业。
埃米：哇！我想要一个。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶explain /ɪkˈspleɪn/ *v.* 解释

考向：explain 作动词，意为“解释”，固定结构 explain sth. to sb. 意为“向某人解释某事/物”。

eg:（枣庄中考）After you argue with your parents you must communicate with them and **explain** why you did that.
在你同父母争吵之后，你必须同他们交流，解释你为什么那样做。

【考题在线 1】根据句意，用所给词的适当形式填空：
Sally loves chocolate. That _____（explain）why it's hard for her to lose weight.（无锡）

点拨：本题用主谓一致法解题。根据第一句的时态和从句的时态可知，这里也应该用一般现在时。又因该句主语是 That，所以谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。

❷post /pəʊst/ *v.* 邮寄

考向一：post 作动词，意为“邮寄”，美式英语用 mail。固定结构 post sth. for sb.，意为“为某人邮寄某物”。

eg: I **posted** a letter **for** my friend on my way home.
在回家的路上我为我朋友寄了一封信。

考向二：post 作名词，意为“邮政”，post office 意为“邮局”，postcard 意为“明信片”，postman 意为“邮递员”。

eg:（苏州中考）My cousin used to be very interested in collecting **postcards**.
我堂弟过去对收集明信片非常感兴趣。

❸whatever /wɒtˈevə(r)/ *pron.* 任何，一切事物

eg: **Whatever** happens, you must keep calm.
无论发生什么，你必须保持冷静。

考向：wherever 无论哪儿；whoever 无论谁；whenever 无论何时；however 无论怎么样，然而。


知识微课：whatever

eg:（成都中考）**Whenever** I am in trouble, my classmates will help me out.
无论何时我有困难，我的同学都会帮助我摆脱困境。

【考题在线 2】根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词：“_____（无论何事）happens, I'll look after my father well.” The Most Beautiful Filial Child（最美孝心少年）Liang Weiyue said.（连云港）

点拨：本题用句意理解法解题。句意：无论发生何事，我将照看好我的父亲……。whatever 意为“无论何事”，符合句意。

❹put out 扑灭

考向一：动词短语 put out 属于“动词 + 副词”型短语，名词作宾语，可以位于中间，也可以位于其后，但人称代词宾格作宾语，只能位于其中间。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

eg: There was a fire last night. Half an hour later, firemen **put** it **out**.
昨晚发生了一场火灾，半小时后消防队员们扑灭了它。

考向二：常见的含 put 的短语：

put on 穿上；put away 把……收起来；put off 推迟；put in 安装；put up 张贴，举手；put through 接通；put down 放下

eg:（武汉中考）—Jason, would you please **put up** this notice?
贾森，请你把这个通知张贴一下，好吗？
—With pleasure.
愿意效劳。

【考题在线 3】 The young firemen were so brave that they _____ the fire and saved the children in that house. （镇江）

A. put in
B. put on
C. put out
D. put up

方法真题练：辨析法

点拨：本题用辨析法解题。考查动词短语的辨析。句意：这些年轻的消防员们是如此勇敢以至于他们_____了火，并且救出了在那个房子里的孩子们。put in 安装；put on 穿上；put out 扑灭；put up 举起，搭建。根据横线后面 the fire，可知用 put out 与之匹配。

【考题在线 4】 —Oh, my God! I have _____ five pounds.
—Don't worry. It's normal for a growing teenage girl.
（泰安）【导学号：28374010】

A. put up
B. put off
C. put on
D. put down

5 one /wʌn/ *pron.* 一；一个人；一件事物

考向：[辨析] one，it 与 that：

it	it 用以指特定的物，即上下文提到的、同名称的、同样事物的那个名词，而不是同类事物的其他东西。it 既可替代单数可数名词，也可替代不可数名词，或前面提到的事情或情况。
one	one 不带任何前置定语，单独使用时，表示泛指，指同名称中的另一事物，常常代替有不定冠词 a/an 修饰的名词。one 既可代替人，也可以代替物，但只能代替可数名词，其复数形式为 ones。
	当 one 前有形容词修饰时，前面需加 a/an。
that	that 可以代替 the + 单数名词/不可数名词，用于特指。主要用于两种东西的对比，其复数形式为 those。

eg: I have lost my pen. I'm looking for **it**.
我已经丢了我的钢笔，我正在找它。
I'm looking for a flat. I'd really like **one** with a garden.
我正在找一套公寓，我真的想要带有花园的一套。
The population of China is larger than **that** of any other country.
中国的人口比其他任何国家的人口都多。
（泉州中考）Oh, you want a pen? OK, I'll get **one** for you.
哦，你想要支钢笔吗？好，我会给你拿一支。

【考题在线 5】 There are enough cups for each visitor to have _____. （宜宾）

A. one　　B. it
C. this　　D. that

点拨：本题用语法判定法解题。考查代词用法。句意：有足够的杯子，（可保证）来客人手一个。本处 one 代指 a cup。

【考题在线 6】 —I'm a little hungry, Mum!
—There are some apple pies on the table; you may take _____. （泰安）

A. it　　B. this
C. that　　D. one

考题在线答案

1. explains
2. Whatever
3. C　4. C　5. A　6. D

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见150页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词

1. Mr. Li is _____（解释）to us how to organize our ideas according to the type of writing. （盐城）
2. Can you _____（邮寄）the letter for me on your way home?
3. Not every student has a good _____（大脑）.
4. We shall never leave you _____（无论何事）happens.
5. With the development of science and technology, more and more _____（机器人）are used in factories. （宿迁）

二、单项选择

6. —I don't know if it _____ tomorrow.
—Well, if it _____, the school sports meet will be canceled. （咸宁）
A. will rain; will rain
B. rains; will rain
C. will rain; rains
D. rains; rains

7. —The light in Bill's office is still on. I wonder _____.
—Maybe at midnight again. （泰安）
A. if will he stop working
B. why he works so hard
C. how long will he work
D. when he will stop working

8. —Did you find your English dictionary yesterday?
—No, I didn't find _____, but I've borrowed _____ from the school library.
A. it; it　　B. it; one
C. one; it　　D. one; one

9. —Where is your father, Helen?
—He is trying to _____ a new shower in the bathroom. （扬州）
A. put out　　B. put in
C. put through　　D. put down

10. —I'd like to know _____.
—Maybe in the forest. （重庆）
A. whether we will go camping
B. where we will go camping
C. whether will we go camping
D. where will we go camping

11. —Your bedroom is so clean.
—Of course. It _____ every day. （随州）
A. cleans　　B. cleaned
C. is cleaned　　D. was cleaned

12. You must wear strong shoes and socks _____ you climb the mountains. （牡丹江）
A. whatever　　B. wherever　　C. whenever

Period 2 Reading

课时导入　拓展阅读

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

A Living with a robot

课文朗读A

Daniel is very interested in robots. He found an interesting story in this month's Robot magazine. Here is the story.

The home robot

Mr Jiang is a manager of a big company in Sunshine Town. He is always too busy to have any time to relax. "I have to buy a robot so that I can have more free time," Mr Jiang thought. So he **ordered**[1] one from a robot shop.

The robot made Mr Jiang's life much easier. When he got up in the morning, breakfast was made, his business suit was **smoothly**[2] ironed, and his lunch box was already prepared. That made him very happy.

A 和机器人生活

丹尼尔对机器人非常感兴趣。他在本月的《机器人》杂志上发现了一个有趣的故事。下面就是那个故事。

居家机器人

江先生是阳光镇一家大公司的经理。他总是太忙而没有任何时间休息。"我得买个机器人，以便我能有更多的空闲时间，"江先生想。因此他从机器人商店订购了一个。

机器人使江先生的生活容易多了。当他早上起床时，早饭做好了，他的公务装被熨得很平整，并且他的午餐盒已经准备好了。这使他非常高兴。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

While Mr Jiang was at work, the robot would do all the housework. It would go shopping at the supermarket as well.

When Mr Jiang returned home from work, his flat would look as good as new, and a delicious dinner would be ready for him. After dinner, the robot would tidy up. That allowed Mr Jiang to do whatever he liked. He would watch TV or do some reading. It seemed that in general the robot **satisfied**[3] Mr Jiang's **needs**[4].

After a few comfortable weeks, however, things started to go wrong. The robot caught a virus and **no longer**[5] worked **properly**[6]. It began to make stupid mistakes. Sometimes it woke Mr Jiang up at four o'clock in the morning. When Mr Jiang got home, he would find his flat in a **complete**[7] **mess**[8]: food was **laid**[9] on the bed; milk was **stored**[10] in the rubbish bin; coins, bills and his private **papers**[11] were **spread**[12] all over the floor. Moreover, the robot moved too fast on its wheels and often knocked things over. Mr Jiang did not know what to **do with**[13] it.

In the end, Mr Jiang decided to return the robot to the robot shop. **Robots can help people a lot, but they can also be too much trouble!**[14]

B Buying a robot

B1 After reading the story, Daniel wrote down some words he does not know. Help him match the words on the left with the meanings on the right. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

1. as good as (line 12) _____
2. satisfy (line 17) _____
3. virus (line 19) _____
4. properly (line 19) _____
5. in a complete mess (line 22) _____
6. store (line 23) _____

a. very untidy or dirty
b. in a correct way
c. keep something somewhere
d. very nearly
e. instructions that are designed to cause computer problems
f. provide what is needed

B2 Daniel is thinking of the good and bad points of having a robot. Help him complete the lists below using the information in the story on pages 38 and 39.

当江先生上班时，机器人将做所有的家务活。它也会到超市去购物。

当江先生下班回家时，他的公寓看起来几乎像新的一样，而且可口的晚餐将为他准备好。晚饭后，机器人将收拾干净。这就允许江先生做他喜欢的任何事情。他将看电视或阅读。看起来这个机器人大体上满足了江先生的需求。

然而，几周舒服的生活之后，情况开始不对了。机器人感染了病毒，不再正常地工作了。它开始犯愚蠢的错误。有时早上四点钟它就把江先生叫醒。当江先生回家时，他会发现他的公寓乱作一团：食物放在床上，牛奶储存在垃圾箱里，硬币、账单和他的私人文件撒得满地都是。而且机器人依靠轮子移动得太快，经常把东西撞翻。江先生不知道该如何处理它。

最后，江先生决定把机器人退给机器人商店。机器人能帮助人们许多，但它们也可能成为大麻烦。

B 购买机器人

B1 读完故事后，丹尼尔把他不认识的一些词写了下来。帮助他将左边的词与右边的意思搭配起来。在空白处写出正确的字母。

1. 几乎与……一样 （第 12 行） _____
2. 满足 （第 17 行） _____
3. 病毒 （第 19 行） _____
4. 正确地 （第 19 行） _____
5. 乱作一团 （第 22 行） _____
6. 储存 （第 23 行） _____

a. 非常不整洁或脏
b. 以一种正确的方式
c. 把某物保存在某处
d. 几乎
e. 被设计用来引起电脑问题的指令
f. 提供所需要的东西

B2 丹尼尔正在考虑拥有机器人的优点和缺点。用第 38 页和 39 页的故事中的信息帮助他完成下面所列条目。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Good points

1. With the robot's help, I will have a lot more time to _____.
2. It can make _____ for me in the morning.
3. It can _____ my clothes.
4. It can _____ at the supermarket if I am busy.
5. It can _____ after dinner.
6. My flat will look _____.

Bad points

1. If the robot catches _____, it will cause a lot of problems.
2. It might _____ early in the morning.
3. It might lay my food on the _____.
4. It might store milk in the _____.
5. It might spread coins, bills and my _____ all over the floor.
6. It might move too fast and _____.

B3 Daniel and Millie are talking on the phone. Daniel wants to buy a robot. Millie is asking him what it would be like to live with a robot. Write a T if Daniel's answer is true or an F if it is false.

Millie: Would a robot bring any changes to your life?
Daniel: (1) Yes. Some changes might be good, but some might not.
Millie: How could a robot help you in the morning?
Daniel: (2) It could eat breakfast for me.
Millie: Could it do some shopping for you?
Daniel: (3) Yes. It could do some shopping at the supermarket.
Millie: What would the robot do while you are at school?
Daniel: (4) It would do the housework.
Millie: Could the robot cook?
Daniel: (5) I'm afraid it couldn't.
Millie: Does a robot sometimes go wrong?
Daniel: (6) Yes, a robot sometimes goes wrong.
Millie: What might cause a robot not to work properly?
Daniel: (7) For example, it could catch a virus.
Millie: What would happen then?
Daniel: (8) It would make stupid mistakes.
Millie: Could you fix your robot by yourself?
Daniel: (9) No. I wouldn't know what to do with it.
Millie: So what could you do if you find the robot too much trouble?
Daniel: (10) I could return it to the factory.

优点

1. 有了机器人的帮助，我将有更多的时间去放松。
2. 早上它能为我做早餐。
3. 它能熨烫我的衣服。
4. 假如我很忙，它能到超市去购物。
5. 晚饭后，它能收拾干净。
6. 我的公寓会看起来几乎像新的一样。

缺点

1. 如果机器人感染了病毒，它会引起许多问题。
2. 它可能早上把我早早地叫醒。
3. 它可能把我的食物放在床上。
4. 它可能把牛奶储存在垃圾箱里。
5. 它可能把硬币、账单和私人文件撒得满地都是。
6. 它可能移动得太快并且把东西撞翻。

B3 丹尼尔和米莉正在电话中交谈。丹尼尔想买一个机器人。米莉正在问他和机器人生活在一起会是什么样子。如果丹尼尔的回答是正确就写“T”，错误就写“F”。

米莉：机器人会给你的生活带来一些变化吗？
丹尼尔：是的。有些变化可能是好的，但有些可能是不好的。
米莉：机器人在早上能怎样帮助你？
丹尼尔：它能替我吃早餐。
米莉：它能为你购物吗？
丹尼尔：是的。它能在超市购物。
米莉：当你在上学的时候，机器人将做点什么？
丹尼尔：它将做家务活。
米莉：机器人会做饭吗？
丹尼尔：我恐怕它不会。
米莉：机器人有时会出错吗？
丹尼尔：是的，机器人有时出错。
米莉：什么可能导致机器人不正常地工作呢？
丹尼尔：例如，它可能会感染病毒。
米莉：那么会发生什么呢？
丹尼尔：它会犯愚蠢的错误。
米莉：你会自己修理机器人吗？
丹尼尔：不会，我将不知道怎样处理它。
米莉：那么如果你发现机器人有太多麻烦，你能做些什么呢？
丹尼尔：我可以把它退给工厂。

荣德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶order /ˈɔːdə(r)/ *vt.* 订购

eg: He **ordered** three new suits for himself.
他给自己订购了三套新西装。

考向:[辨析] order 与 book:

book 预订,往往用于在电影院、剧院、车站等处订票、座。	I have **booked** two tickets to New York. 我订了两张去纽约的票。
order 指订购,向商店订购肥料,饭店点餐等。	**order** a suit 订一套西服

❷smoothly /ˈsmuːðli/ *adv.* 平整地,顺利地

eg: A ball can roll **smoothly** on the water.
球可以在水上平稳地滚动。

考向:其形容词形式是 smooth,意为"平整的,平滑的,顺利的"。

eg: Her skin is as **smooth** as silk.
她的皮肤像丝绸一样光滑。

❸satisfy /ˈsætɪsfaɪ/ *vt.* 满足,使……满意

eg: Some people are very hard to **satisfy**.
有些人是很难使其满意的。
We must **satisfy** the people's needs.
我们必须满足人民的需要。

考向:其形容词 satisfied,意为"满意的",固定结构 be satisfied with 意为"对……满意",相当于 be happy with 或 be pleased with。

eg: Our teacher **is** very **satisfied with** us.
我们的老师对我们很满意。

【考题在线 1】 It is necessary for schools to _____ the need of all the students' development. (安徽)
A. cut B. hide
C. refuse D. satisfy

❹need /niːd/ *n.* 需要的事物,欲望

考向一:need 作名词,意为"需要的事物,欲望"。固定短语 in need,意为"在困境中;在危难中",in need of 意为"需要……"。

eg: We should help people **in need**.
我们应该帮助贫困的人。
I feel a **need** to talk to you about it.
我觉得有必要跟你谈谈它。

【考题在线 2】 —Mum, I want to buy an iPhone 7 Plus for a change.
—Well, I think there is no _____. It's almost the same as an iPhone 7.
A. reason B. need C. answer D. way

点拨:本题用辨析法解题。考查名词词义辨析。reason 理由;need 需要;answer 答案;way 方法。句意:——妈妈,我想换一下(手机)买一个 iPhone 7 Plus。——嗯,我认为没有必要。它几乎和 iPhone 7 是一样的。根据句意可知答案。

考向二:need 作动词,意为"需要",主语是人,其后接人或物、动词不定式以及 sb. to do sth.。主语是物,其后接动词的-ing 形式或 to be done。

eg: Mr Zhang **needs** some help.
张先生需要一些帮助。
I **need** you to carry all the bags for me.
我需要你为我拎所有的包。
Look! My computer **needs checking.**
= Look! My computer **needs to be checked.**
看! 我的电脑需要检测。

【考题在线 3】 完成下列句子:
你需要在完成作文后仔细检查,找出拼写错误。 (兰州)
You _____ to check carefully for _____ mistakes after writing the composition.

点拨:本题用固定搭配法解题。根据短语 need to do sth. 需要做某事;spelling mistakes 拼写错误可知答案。

【考题在线 4】 The robot needs _____ once a month. And we will check it for you for free.
A. to check B. be checked
C. checking D. check

点拨:本题用固定搭配法解题。考查非谓语动词的用法。句意:那个机器人每个月需要被检查一次。而且我们将为你免费检查它。need doing = need to be done 需要被……。

考向三:need 作情态动词,常用于疑问句或否定句。

eg: (南京中考)—Mom, must I go shopping with you?
妈妈,我必须和你一起去购物吗?

荣德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

—No, you **needn't**. You can watch the film *Big Hero* 6 with your friends.
不，你不必。你可以和你的朋友看《超能陆战队》。

【考题在线5】You _____ return the book now. You can keep it until next week if you like. （青岛）
A. have to　　B. can't
C. mustn't　　D. needn't
点拨：本题用辨析法解题。考查情态动词的用法。句意：你_____现在归还这本书。如果你喜欢，你可以保留它到下一周。由下文句意可推测，现在"没必要"归还。

5no longer 不再
考向：[辨析] no longer 意为"不再"，强调时间的不再延续，相当于 not ... any longer，常与表示状态的动词或延续性动词连用；而 no more 意为"不再"，强调数量或程度的不再增加，相当于 not ... any more，常与名词，瞬间动词连用。
eg：（达州中考）—I wonder if you can look after yourself well.
我想知道你是否能照顾好自己。
—Don't worry. I'm **not** a child **any longer**.
不要担心，我不再是个孩子了。
Why doesn't he speak to me any more?
他为啥不再理我了？

6properly /ˈprɒpəli/ *adv.* **正确地，恰当地**
eg：The heater in my car doesn't work **properly**.
我汽车里的暖气设备不正常工作了。
考向：properly 的形容词形式是 proper，意为"正确的，恰当的"。
eg：He could not come up with a **proper** answer.
他想不出一个恰当的回答。

7complete /kəmˈpliːt/ *adj.* **完全的，彻底的**
考向一：[辨析] all 与 complete：complete 侧重于"整体"，用来修饰单数名词；all 侧重于"全部"，可以用来修饰复数名词。
eg：Let's review the **complete** course.
让我们把整个课程都复习一遍。
Let's review **all** the lessons.
让我们把各门功课都复习一遍。
考向二：complete 作动词，意为"完成"。其近义词是 finish 或 end。
eg：Can you **complete** your task on time?
你们能按时完成任务吗？

拓展 副词形式 completely，意为"完全地"。
eg：I understand **completely**.
我完全明白。

【考题在线6】根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词：
I _____（完全地）forgot that it was his birthday last Sunday. （德阳）
点拨：句意：我完全忘记了上个周日是他的生日。修饰动词 forgot 应用副词形式。

8mess /mes/ *n.* **乱七八糟**
eg：The heavy rain made a great **mess** of the garden.
这场大雨把花园搞得一团糟。
考向：固定短语 in a mess，意为"乱七八糟，混乱不堪"。
eg：The local economy is now **in a mess**.
当地的经济现在很混乱。

【考题在线7】完成下列句子：
他发现自己的房间乱七八糟。
_____ （扬州）
点拨：本题用固定搭配法解题。in a mess 固定搭配，一片混乱。

9lay /leɪ/ *vt.* **放，搁**
考向：[难点][辨析] lie，lay 与 lie：


知识微课：lie与lay

lie 不及物动词，"躺；位于" lie—lay—lain—lying	Shanghai **lies** to the south of Beijing. 上海位于北京的南方。 She has **lain** in bed for three days. 她已经在床上躺了三天了。
lay 及物动词，"放置；下蛋" lay—laid—laid—laying	These hens **lay** eggs every day. 这些鸡每天下蛋。 He **laid** his hand on my shoulder. 他把手放在我的肩上。
lie 不及物动词，说谎 lie—lied—lied—lying	Don't **lie** to me. 别对我撒谎。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

特色土方法

巧记 lie 的词形变化

规则的说谎，不规则的躺；
躺下就下蛋，下蛋不规则。

说明：
(1)“规则的说谎”指的是动词“lie”的规则变化，在词尾直接＋d 构成，是“说谎”的意思；
(2)“不规则的躺”指的是“lie”不规则变化为“lay，lain”时，是“躺下”的意思；
(3)“躺下就下蛋”指的是表示“躺下”意思的“lie”的过去式“lay”可作动词原形，是“下蛋”的意思；
(4)“下蛋不规则”指的是“lay”的动词变化是不规则的，即：“laid，laid”。

注意：
第 2 句“lie”表示“躺下”时，还有“位于、在”等意思；
第 3 句“lay”除了表示“下蛋”外，还有“放置”的意思。

【考题在线 8】根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词：
He _____（搁）all his work aside and started to play with his son.
点拨：本题用句意理解法解题。句意：他把所有的工作放置到了一边，开始和他的儿子玩耍。此题考查动词，根据句意，此处应填表示“搁”的 lay 的过去式。

⑩**store** /stɔː(r)/ *vt.* 储藏，存储
eg：Animals are storing food for winter.
动物们正在为冬季存储食物。
拓展 store 作名词，意为“商店”，相当于 shop。
eg：There are a lot of **stores** on both sides of the road.
这条路的两边有许多商店。

⑪**paper** /ˈpeɪpə(r)/ *n.* 文件，证明
考向：paper 作可数名词，意为“文件，证明”，常用复数形式，还可意为“试卷，论文”；作不可数名词，意为“纸，纸张”。
eg：（绥化中考）All of us are reading the test **papers** in silence.
我们大家正在安静地阅读试卷。
Look! What's on the **paper**?
看！纸上有什么？

⑫**spread** /spred/ *vt. & vi.* （使）散开，扩散
考向一：【注意】spread 是不规则动词，其过去式、过去分词均是 spread。
eg：The radio **spread** the news as soon as the accident happened. 事故一发生，收音机就把这条消息传播出去了。
考向二：spread 还可作名词，意为“传播”。
eg：The government is taking action to prevent the **spread** of the disease. 政府正采取行动来阻止这种疾病的传播。

【考题在线 9】完成下列句子：
谣言在人群当中广泛地传播开来。
The rumor was widely _____ among the crowd.
点拨：本题用语法判定法解题。to spread rumors 散布谣言。the rumor 与 spread 是被动关系，spread 过去分词仍是 spread。

⑬**do with** 对付，处置
考向：[辨析] do with 与 deal with 意思一样，但 do with 常与 what 连用，而 deal with 常与 how 连用。
eg：**What** will you **do with** these old books?
你将怎样处理这些旧书？
How will you **deal with** these old books?
你将怎样处理这些旧书？

【考题在线 10】Many students don't know _____ their problems, so they often feel stressed. （东台市月考）
A. how to deal with
B. how to do with
C. what to do
D. how to do
点拨：本题用固定搭配法解题。句意：许多学生不知道怎样应对他们的问题，所以他们经常感到压力。how to deal with = what to do with 怎样应对。

⑭**寻找中心句法**：此句为全文的中心句，起到了总结全文的作用。一般我们写作的时候，文章的中心句可能在第一段，也可能在最后一段。本文的中心句就是最后一段的最后一句。

考题在线答案
1. D　2. B　3. need; spelling
4. C　5. D　6. completely
7. He found his room in a mess.
8. laid　9. spread
10. A

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 （答案见151页）

一、根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词

1. Have you looked through this _____（文件）yet?
2. This reservoir（水库）is used to _____（储藏）water for our town.
3. Improving people's life is a matter of _____（普遍的）interest.
4. To be a _____（私人的）detective sounds like a challenging job.
5. Whatever he asks for, his grandpa always _____(满足)his needs.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. My elder brother is learning German. But he still can't speak it _____(proper).
7. I will send you a Christmas card as soon as the meeting _____ (end).
8. Within weeks, his confidence had _____ (spread) throughout the team.
9. How unlucky he was! He was _____ (mistake) for the suspect.
10. —I'm sorry I _____ (complete) forgot that it was your birthday yesterday.
    —Never mind. （泰州）

三、单项选择

11. The robot _____ the virus and it was _____ trouble.
    A. caught; too much
    B. caught; much too
    C. had; too
    D. had; a lot
12. We were _____ tired _____ we fell asleep at once yesterday.
    A. too; to　　B. so; that
    C. so; as to　　D. too; that
13. —Could you take out the rubbish and do the dishes, Tony?
    —Sure. Mom will be mad if she sees this _____, I think. （黄冈）
    A. matter　　B. mess
    C. trouble　　D. difficulty
14. Your robot has got a virus and it needs _____.
    A. repairing　　B. to be repaired
    C. to repair　　D. A&B
15. —Miss Wang, must I clean the room now?
    —No, you _____. You _____ clean it tomorrow.【导学号：28374011】
    A. mustn't; can
    B. needn't; may
    C. needn't ; must
    D. mustn't; must
16. This problem worried her so much that she didn't know _____ with it.
    A. what she can do
    B. what she could deal
    C. how to do
    D. how to deal

四、完成下列句子

17. 天太黑，什么也看不见。（too …to …）
    _____
18. 患难见真情。 （平凉）
    A friend _____ is a friend indeed.
19. 没有人喜欢这男孩，因为他经常撒谎。
    _____
20. 总体来说，埃米是一位勤奋的学生。
    _____
21. 我们不再是小孩了，我们能照顾好我们自己。
    _____
    _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

I. 课文原文及译文

Sentences (I)

A Using object clauses or objects + object complements

Sometimes we use objects + object complements to replace object clauses.

He saw **that the robot was making breakfast.**

→He saw **the robot making breakfast.**

He found **that his flat was in a complete mess.**

→He found **his flat in a complete mess.**

He thinks **that it is too much trouble to own a robot.**

→He thinks **it too much trouble to own a robot.**

Talking about the robot

Before the robot went wrong, Mr Jiang was talking on the phone with his mother about it. Use an object clause to rewrite each of his sentences.

1. Every day, I notice the robot busy with all kinds of housework.

_____

2. When I get up, I find my breakfast ready.

_____

3. When I come back from work, I find my flat as good as new.

_____

4. I **consider**[1] the robot a great help in my daily life.

_____

5. I feel it comfortable to live with a robot.

_____

B Using object clauses or question words + to-infinitives

Sometimes we use question words + to-infinitives to replace object clauses.

The robot no longer knew **when it should cook breakfast.**

→The robot no longer knew **when to cook breakfast.**

Mr Jiang did not know **what he should do with the robot.**

→Mr Jiang did not know **what to do with the robot.**

Helping Mr Jiang look after his mother

Mr Jiang wrote a letter to his mother before going on a business trip. Use a question word + to-infinitive to replace each object clause. Write them above the clauses.

Dear Mum,

I am going on a business trip to Shenzhen tomorrow. I have asked my robot to look after you while I am away.

You have a serious heart problem and have to take **medicine**[2] every day.

句子(I)

A 使用宾语从句或“宾语+宾语补足语”

有时我们用“宾语+宾语补足语”来代替宾语从句

他看见机器人正在做早餐。

→他看见机器人正在做早餐。

他发现他的公寓乱作一团。

→他发现他的公寓乱作一团。

他认为拥有机器人太麻烦了。

→他认为拥有机器人太麻烦了。

谈论机器人

在机器人出现故障之前，江先生正在电话中与他的妈妈谈论它。用宾语从句改写他的每个句子。

1. 每天，我注意到机器人忙于各种家务活。

_____

2. 当我起床的时候，我发现我早餐准备好了。

_____

3. 当我下班回来的时候，我发现我的公寓看起来几乎像新的一样。

_____

4. 我认为机器人在我的日常生活中有很大的帮助。

_____

5. 我感觉与机器人生活在一起是舒服的。

_____

B 用宾语从句或“疑问词+动词不定式”

有时我们用“疑问词+动词不定式”来代替宾语从句。

机器人不再知道它应该什么时候做早餐。

→机器人不再知道什么时候做早餐。

江先生不知道他应该怎样处理这个机器人。

→江先生不知道怎样处理这个机器人。

帮助江先生照顾他的妈妈

江先生在出差之前给他的妈妈写了一封信。用“疑问词+动词不定式”来代替每个宾语从句。在从句上方写下它们。

亲爱的妈妈：

明天我要去深圳出差。我已经叫我的机器人在我不在的时候照顾你。

你有严重的心脏病，必须每天服药。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

However, you have a poor memory and often forget when you should take your pills. My robot will remind you to take them at the right time. If you want to go out, my robot will help you find your coat—you are always **unsure**[3] where you could find your clothes. My robot will go to the supermarket to buy some fruit and vegetables for you, as you often cannot decide which you should choose at the supermarket. You often feel lonely because you do not know who you can talk to, and my robot will try to do something to make you happy.

Take care and I will see you soon!

Yours,

Jiang Shan

可是，你记性很差，常常忘记你应该什么时候服药。我的机器人会提醒你在正确的时间服药。如果你想出去，我的机器人将会帮你找到外套——你总是不能确定在什么地方可以找到你的衣服。我的机器人会去超市为你买些水果和蔬菜，因为你在超市经常不能决定应该选哪一个。你常常感到孤独，因为你不知道可以跟谁交谈，我的机器人将尽力做些使你开心的事。

保重，我会很快见到你的！

你的，

江山

C Using adverbial clauses or to-infinitives

We can also use **to**-infinitives to replace some adverbial clauses expressing results or purposes.

Mr Jiang is always **so** busy **that he does not have any time for hobbies.**

→Mr Jiang is always **too** busy **to have any time for hobbies.**

The robot is **so** smart **that it can do a lot of things for Mr Jiang.**

→The robot is smart **enough to do a lot of things for Mr Jiang.**

Mr Jiang plans to buy a robot **so that he can have more free time.**

→Mr Jiang plans to buy a robot **in order to have more free time.**

The robot was great!

Mr Jiang's mother was very pleased with the robot. She is telling Mr Jiang on the phone about her life with the robot. Rewrite her sentences with to-infinitives.

1. I was so forgetful that I didn't lock the door last night.
   I was too forgetful _____
2. The robot was so careful that it reminded me of this.
   The robot was careful enough _____
3. I was so weak that I couldn't go up and down the stairs often.
   I was too weak _____
4. The robot was so kind that it bought me everything I needed.
   The robot was kind enough _____
5. Sometimes I took a walk with it so that I could have a better sleep.
   Sometimes I took a walk with it in order _____

C 用状语从句或动词不定式

我们也可以用动词不定式来代替一些表达结果或目的的状语从句。

江先生总是如此忙碌，以至于他没有任何时间培养业余爱好。

→江先生总是太忙碌了而没有任何时间培养业余爱好。

那个机器人是如此聪明，以至于它能为江先生做许多事情。

→那个机器人足够聪明来为江先生做许多事情。

江先生计划买一个机器人以便他能有更多的空闲时间。

→为了能有更多的空闲时间，江先生计划买一个机器人。

那个机器人真棒！

江先生的妈妈对那个机器人非常满意。她正在电话中告诉江先生有关她与机器人的生活。用动词不定式改写她的句子。

1. 我是如此健忘，以至于我昨晚没有锁门。
   我太健忘了，昨晚没有锁门。
2. 机器人是如此细心，以至于它提醒了我这件事。
   机器人足够细心来提醒了我这件事。
3. 我是如此虚弱，以至于不能经常上下楼梯。
   我太虚弱了而不能经常上下楼梯。
4. 机器人是如此好，以至于它为我买了我所需要的一切。
   机器人足够好给我买了我所需要的一切。
5. 有时我与它一起散步以便我能有一个更好的睡眠。
   有时为了有一个更好的睡眠，我与它一起散步。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶consider /kənˈsɪdə(r)/ *v.* 考虑，认为

考向一：consider 作“考虑”讲时，后面通常跟名词、代词、动名词或跟从句，不能跟动词不定式，但可以跟“疑问词＋不定式”。

eg：We must **consider** the matter carefully.
我们必须仔细考虑这件事。
Would you **consider** working in Australia?
你会考虑在澳大利亚工作吗？
He **considered** how he should answer the question. 他考虑应当如何回答这个问题。
We should **consider** what to do next.
我们应该考虑下一步做什么。

考向二：consider 作“认为”讲时，后面可接从句，也可接复合宾语。名词、形容词、介词短语以及动词不定式 to be 可充当宾补。

eg：（济宁中考）It's usually **considered** impolite to ask personal questions about others.
问他人的个人问题通常被认为是不礼貌的。
We **consider** that the driver is not to blame.
我们认为这位司机不该承担责任。

【考题在线 1】—Jack hasn't taken his piano lessons for a long time.
—He is considering _____ his piano course and spending more time on his study. （鄂州）
A. to drop　　B. to throw
C. dropping　　D. throwing

【考题在线 2】The Smiths are considering _____ to England because they _____ the cold weather there.
A. not moving; aren't used to
B. not moving; didn't use to
C. not to move; didn't use to
D. not to move; aren't used to

点拨：本题用固定搭配法解题。考查动词短语的用法。句意：史密斯一家人正在考虑不要搬往英格兰因为他们不习惯那儿寒冷的天气。固定短语 consider doing sth. 考虑做某事 be used to sth. 习惯某事/物。

❷medicine /ˈmedsn/ *n.* 药

考向一：[辨析] 表示“药”的 medicine 是不可数名词，而 pill 则是可数名词，意为“药丸，药片”。

eg：（宜昌中考）The **medicine** should be taken twice a day after meals.
这药应该每天两次，饭后吃。
My grandma doesn't need to take sleeping **pills**. 我奶奶不需要吃安眠药。

考向二：medicine 的形容词是 medical，意为“医疗的”。

eg：This is the best **medical** team in the country. 这是该国最好的医疗队伍。

【考题在线 3】根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词：
The _____（医学的）level in the city is better than that in the countryside. （滨州）

点拨：本题用语法判定法解题。对“医学的”进行了挖空，考查形容词的用法。medicine 是名词，medical 是形容词。

❸unsure /ˌʌnˈʃʊə(r)/ *adj.* 不确定，没把握

考向一：unsure 作形容词，意为“不确定，没把握”，相当于 uncertain。

eg：He was **unsure** of what to do next.
他对下一步该做什么犹豫不定。
He was **unsure** how to reply/what to say.
他拿不准该如何回答/该说什么。

考向二：unsure 的反义词是 sure，意为“确定的，有把握的”。其后接 of 短语，动词不定式或 that 从句。

eg：He's not so **sure** of himself these days.
他近来不大有自信。
I'm **sure** you'll want a go when you see it.
我有把握你看到了它就会想试一下。
The news is **sure** to upset him.
这条消息必定会使他心烦意乱。

【考题在线 4】I'm not sure _____ he is right or not.
A. if　　B. whether　　C. that　　D. who

点拨：本题用题眼法解题。句意：我不能确定他是否是正确的。本题考查宾语从句，但是 if 不能和 or not 连用，whether 可以和 or not 连用。

考题在线答案
1. C　2. A
3. medical　4. B

基础 不要德

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

简单句和复合句之间的转换(一)

考点1 用复合宾语，即“宾语 + 宾补”这种结构将宾语从句改为简单句。



“谓语动词 + 宾语从句”→“谓语动词 + 宾语 + 宾补”

常见的复合宾语结构有：

1. see, notice, hear, watch + sb. + do / doing
2. find, make, think, keep, leave + sb. + *adj.*
3. find, feel + it + *adj.* + to do sth.
4. find + sb. + *prep.* phrase

eg: I heard that she was singing English songs.

I heard her singing English songs.

我听见她正在唱英文歌。

I find that it's hard to learn math well.

I find it hard to learn math well.

我发现学好数学很难。

【考题在线 1】把下列含 that 引导的宾语从句的复合句改为简单句：

I found that a boy was lying on the road yesterday.

I found _____ _____ _____ on the road yesterday. 【导学号：28374012】

点拨：考查复合句改为简单句。句意：昨天我发现一个男孩正躺在路上。本题考查把含有 that 的宾语从句转化为“find + 宾语 + 宾补”。

考点2 用“特殊疑问词 + 不定式”结构将宾语从句转化为简单句。

主句的主语与从句的主语一致时，可将宾语从句转化为“特殊疑问词 + 不定式”结构。

【注意】用“特殊疑问词 + 动词不定式”将宾语从句转换成简单句的前提是主句的谓语动词通常是 know, remember, learn, wonder, decide 等。

eg: The robot **knows** when it makes lunch boxes for you.

The robot **knows** when to make lunch boxes for you.

机器人知道什么时候给你准备午餐盒。

【考题在线 2】Mr. Jiang advised us which we should choose as our after-school activities.（改为简单句）

Mr. Jiang advised us which _____ _____ as our after-school activities. （南通）

点拨：考查复合句改为简单句。句意：江先生建议我们应该选择哪些作为我们的课外活动。本题考查把含有特殊疑问词的宾语从句转化为“特殊疑问词 + 动词不定式”。

考点3 将状语从句变为简单句

1. so ... that ... 引导的结果状语从句的复合句可以用“(not) ... enough to”或“too ... to ...”结构转变为简单句。

eg: I ran **so** quickly **that** I caught the bus.

I ran quickly **enough to** catch the bus.

我跑得很快，赶上了公交车。

(*孝感中考*) The box is **so** heavy **that** we can't carry it.

The box is **too** heavy for us **to** carry.

这个箱子太重了，我们搬不动。

2. so that 引导的目的状语从句的复合句可以用“in order to”结构转换为简单句。

eg: He worked hard **so that** everything could be ready in time.

He worked hard **in order to** get everything ready in time.

他卖力地工作，为的是一切能够及时就绪。

【考题在线 3】Amy was so young that she couldn't understand such a thing.（改成同义句）

Amy was _____ young _____ understand such a thing. （新疆）

点拨：考查复合句改为简单句。句意：埃米太年轻了以至于她不能理解这样的事。so ... that ... 引导的复合句可以转化为 too ... to ... 引导的简单句。

考题在线答案

1. a boy lying 2. to choose 3. too, to

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 (答案见151页)

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. Some people believe Stonehenge has a _____ (medicine) purpose; that is, they can keep people healthy.
2. —What do you think of his idea?
   —I think it is worth _____ (think) about.
3. She is so proud that she always considers _____ (she) an excellent singer.
4. The summer holidays are coming. Have you ever considered _____ (travel) abroad?
5. We are all _____ (sure) whether the girl has a good memory or not. She is new.

二、语法专练

6. Mrs Li considers the microwave a great help in cooking.
   Mrs Li considers _____ the _____ _____ a great help in cooking.
7. I found it difficult to learn English well.
   I found _____ _____ difficult to _____ English well.
8. She can't remember how she should change the battery.
   She can't remember _____ _____ _____ the battery.
9. The robot doesn't know what it will buy at the supermarket.
   The robot doesn't know _____ _____ _____ at the supermarket.
10. I can't decide which robot I should buy.
    I can't decide _____ _____ to _____.
11. Jim worked so hard that he got a good mark in the exam.
    Jim worked hard _____ to _____ a good mark in the exam.
12. Mr Jiang wanted to buy a robot so that he could make his life much easier.
    Mr Jiang wanted to buy a robot _____ _____ _____ make his life much easier.
13. I have to buy a robot so that I can have more free time.
    I have to buy a robot _____ _____ _____ have more free time.
14. He doesn't have to go out for lunch because his mother makes a lunch box for him every day.
    His mother makes a lunch box for him every day. _____ _____ _____, he doesn't have to go out for lunch.
15. He can't decide where he should stay for the night.
    He can't decide _____ _____ _____ for the night.
16. The question is so difficult that I can't answer it.
    The question is _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____.
17. I don't know who I can talk to.
    I don't know _____ _____ _____ _____.
18. I think that it is impossible to finish the work today.
    I think _____ _____ _____ _____ the work today.
19. Could you please teach me how I can search the Internet?
    Could you please teach me _____ _____ _____ _____ _____?
20. I saw that he went into that house just now.
    I _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ just now.

未来基德

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A The robot show

A1 There is going to be a robot show in Sunshine Town. Daniel has found a poster about the event. Look at the poster. Help him complete his notes with as much information as you can.

International Robot Show

Place: the town hall
Dates: 14 – 22 March
Time: 9 a. m. – 4:30 p. m.
Ticket: ¥20 (free for children under 12)

Special gift!

Come to the robot show on 14 March and receive a copy of *Robot* magazine for free!

- There is going to be a (1) __robot show__ soon.
- Robots from China, (2) _____ and South Korea will be displayed.
- The show will be held at the (3) _____.
- It is from (4) _____ to (5) _____ March.
- It begins at (6) _____ and finishes at (7) _____.
- The price of a ticket is (8) _____ for people 12 years and above.
- One of the robots is designed to help students with their (9) _____. It can read a book in (10) _____ and tell you about it in (11) _____. It has a (12) _____ memory. It never gets anything (13) _____. It does not get (14) _____. You need to give it some oil (15) _____ and change the batteries every (16) _____.

A2 There is a radio programme about the robot show. Listen to the programme carefully and help Daniel complete his notes in Part A1.

课文听力A2
音频及材料

A3 Daniel wants to invite Simon to go to the robot show. Help Daniel complete his email. Use the information in Part A1 to help you.

Hi Simon,

I know you are interested in robots. There is going to be a (1) _____ this week. The show is held at the (2) _____. We can see robots from (3) _____. I have just learnt that one of the robots is designed to (4) _____. It can read a book (5) _____. That is really exciting news! I think we should go and find out more.

综合技能

A 机器人展览会

A1 在阳光镇将有一个机器人展览会。丹尼尔发现了一张有关此事的海报。看这张海报。用尽可能多的信息帮助他完成他的记录。

国际机器人展览会
地点：城镇礼堂
日期：3 月 14 日至 3 月 22 日
时间：上午 9 点至下午 4 点 30 分
票价：¥20（12 岁以下儿童免费）
特别的礼物！
3 月 14 日那天来机器人展览会就能免费得到一本《机器人》杂志！

不久将有一个机器人展览会。
来自中国、日本和韩国的机器人将被展示出来。
展览会将在城镇礼堂举行。
它从 3 月 14 日到 22 日。
它在上午 9 点开始，下午 4 点 30 分结束。
12 岁及以上的人每张票价是 20 元。

其中的一个机器人被设计用来帮助学生做家庭作业。它能在 5 分钟之内看完一本书并用清晰的语言把它给你讲出来。它有一个好的记忆力，从不出错不会累。你需要每个月给它加些油，每两个月更换电池。

A2 有一个关于机器人展览会的广播节目。仔细听节目并帮丹尼尔完成 A1 部分的记录。

A3 丹尼尔想邀请西蒙去机器人展览会。帮助丹尼尔完成他的电子邮件。用 A1 部分的信息来帮助你。

嗨，西蒙：
我知道你对机器人感兴趣。本周将有一个机器人展览会。展览会在城镇礼堂举行。我们能够看到来自中国、日本和韩国的机器人。我刚了解到，其中一个机器人被设计用来帮助学生做家庭作业。它能在 5 分钟之内看完一本书，这真是令人兴奋的消息！我认为我们应该去发现更多（信息）。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

The robot show starts from this Saturday, 14 March. We will receive a (6)_____ for free if we go there on the first day of the show. Since we are over (7)_____, we need to pay (8)_____ each for the tickets. The show begins at (9)_____. Maybe we need to leave home earlier in order to get there **on time**[1].

Would you like to go with me this Saturday morning? Please let me know.

Yours,
Daniel

B Speak up: My robot has caught a virus.

Mr Jiang is calling the robot shop. Work in groups of three and make a phone call talking about what kind of service you need. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

Woman 1: Hello! Can I help you?
Mr Jiang: Hello! I'd like to speak to the Customer Service Department.
Woman 1: Please **hold**[2] and I'll put you **through**[3].
(*5 seconds later*)
Woman 2: Hello! This is the Customer Service Department. What can I do for you?
Mr Jiang: My robot has caught a virus and it has gone wrong.
Woman 2: I'm sorry to hear that. Would you like us to have it checked?
Mr Jiang: Yes, please. Thanks.
Woman 2: Ok. Our robot engineer will contact you soon.

Study skills

British English and American English

There are some differences between British English and American English.

Spelling		
	British	**American**
-mme/-m	programme	program
-ll-/-l-	travelling	traveling
-gue/-g	dialogue	dialog
-our/-or	colour	color
-re/-er	theatre	theater

机器人展览会将在本周六，3 月 14 日开始。如果我们在展览会的第一天去那里，我们将免费得到一本《机器人》杂志。既然我们超过了 12 岁，每张票我们需付 20 元钱。展览会将在上午 9 点开始。也许我们需要早点离开家来准时到达那儿。

本周六早上你想与我一起去吗？请让我知道。

你的，
丹尼尔

B 大声说：我的机器人感染了病毒。

江先生正在给机器人商店打电话。三人一组练习。打电话谈论你需要什么类型的服务。用下面的对话作为示例。

女士 1：你好！我能帮助你吗？
江先生：你好！我想与客服部通电话。
女士 1：请稍等，我将为你接通。
（五秒钟后）
女士 2：你好！这里是客服部。你有什么需要吗？
江先生：我的机器人已经感染了病毒，并且它已经出毛病了。
女士 2：听到这件事我很抱歉。你想要让我们找人检查一下它吗？
江先生：是的。谢谢。
女士 2：好的。我们的机器人工程师将很快联系你。

学习技能

英式英语和美式英语

英式英语和美式英语之间有一些不同之处。

拼写		
	英式	美式
-mme/-m	节目	节目
-ll-/-l-	旅行	旅行
-gue/-g	对话	对话
-our/-or	颜色	颜色
-re/-er	剧院	剧院

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Vocabulary	
British	**American**
bookshop	bookstore
garden	yard
autumn	fall
film	movie
holiday	vacation

Grammar		
	British	**American**
have done/did	I have already given the present to her.	I already gave the present to her.
have got/have	Have you got a radio?	Do you have a radio?

There are also some differences in pronunciation. One of the most obvious is that, in British English, the consonant/r/is pronounced only before a vowel, e. g. classroom. In other cases, the/r/ is silent, e. g. car. In American English, the/r/ is always pronounced.

TIP
You can consult a dictionary to find out more about the differences.

Daniel is writing about Mr Jiang and his robot. Change his sentences into American English, using the information above to help you.

1. He has already bought a robot.

2. This new robot comes in his favourite colours—red, blue and white.

3. The robot can help a lot in the garden.

4. When he goes travelling, the robot can help look after his mother.

5. It is a pity that the robot never goes to see a film with him.

词汇	
英式	美式
书店	书店
花园	花园
秋天	秋天
电影	电影
假期	假期

语法		
	英式	美式
做过	我已经把礼物给她了。	我已经把礼物给她了。
有	你有收音机吗?	你有收音机吗?

在发音方面也有些不同。最明显的一个是，在英式英语中，辅音/r/只能在元音前面发音，例如：classroom。在其他情况下，/r/是不发音的，例如：car。在美式英语中，/r/总是发音的。

提示
你可以查阅字典来发现更多的区别。

丹尼尔正在写关于江先生和他机器人的事。把他的句子改成美式英语，用上面的信息帮助你。

1. 他已经买了一个机器人。

2. 这个新的机器人有他最喜欢的颜色——红色、蓝色和白色。

3. 这个机器人在花园里能帮上很多忙。

4. 当他去旅游的时候，这个机器人能帮助照顾他的妈妈。

5. 可惜的是，这个机器人从不与他去看电影。

课堂基础

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶on time 按时，准时

eg：（广东中考）Could you please give me a hand? I can't complete the task **on time** without your help. 你能帮助我吗？没有你的帮助，我不能按时完成任务。

考向：常见的含 time 的短语：

at a time 每次；at times 有时；from time to time 有时；all the time 一直，总是；on time 按时；at the same time 同时；have a good time 玩得开心；in time 及时

eg：Do you feel lonely **at times/from time to time**? 你有时感到孤独吗？

Can you sing and dance **at the same time**? 你能同时唱歌跳舞吗？

【考题在线 1】 完成下列句子：

I had a bad cold. The doctor told me to take the medicine _____（按时）. （云南）

点拨：本题用固定搭配法解题。句意：我患了重感冒，医生告诉我要按时吃药。on time 准时，按时。

❷hold /həʊld/ *vi.* （打电话时）等待，不挂断

eg：—Hello! May I speak to Tom please? 你好！我能和汤姆通话吗？

—**Hold on** please. He is taking a shower. 请稍等，他正在洗澡。

拓展 hold 作动词，还可意为“拥有，拿着，容纳，举行”。

eg：（鄂州中考）To celebrate Grandfather's eightieth birthday, children are going to **hold** a big party. 为了庆祝爷爷八十大寿，孩子们将举办一个盛大的聚会。

【考题在线 2】 —May I speak to Mr. Black, please?

—_____ He's upstairs. （武威）

A. Hold on, please. B. Yes, speaking.

C. Who's this? D. What's that?

点拨：本题用情景交际法解题。考查情景交际。句意：——我可以和布莱克先生通话吗？——请稍等，他在楼上。B 选项，是的，请讲；C 选项，这是谁？D 选项，那是什么？都不符合句意。

【考题在线 3】 The 32nd Olympic Games _____ in Tokyo in 2020.

A. is held B. will hold

C. will be held D. is going to hold

点拨：本题用语法判定法解题。考查被动语态。句意：第三十二届奥运会将 2020 年在东京举行。奥运会是被举行的，用被动语态，2020 年还未到，用将来时，所以用含有将来时的被动语态，will be held 或是 is going to be held。

培养“跨文化”素养

解词汇文化，培养跨文化交际

近来有一个词，红遍了华人世界。它是英文与汉语的结合体——“hold 住”。它采用中英混搭形式，将英文意思和中文意思巧妙结合，赋予其形式以新的意义。在英语中，“hold”有拿、抱、握住、掌控等意思。“hold 住”就是指无论面对各种状况都要稳住、保持住、把持住、撑得住、坚持住，从容应对一切。“要 hold 住”也有给力、加油的意思。

【素养行动】 面对生活中的种种压力（pressure）与挑战（challenge），我们要相信自己，让我们拥有一颗“hold 住”的心，勇敢前行！

【素养行动结果】 了解英语词汇的发展与演变，培养前卫精神，注重跨文化交际。

❸through /θruː/ *adv.* （电话）接通

考向一：固定短语 put through，意为“给……接通（电话）”。

eg：Please hold the line. I'll **put** you **through** in a minute. 请不要挂断电话，我马上就会为您接通。

考向二：through 作介词，还可表示“穿过”。

eg：The doctor pushed his way **through** the crowd. 医生从人群中挤了过去。

【考题在线 4】 You must be careful when you swim _____ the lake. （潍坊）

A. across B. below C. over D. through

点拨：本题用辨析法解题。考查介词辨析。句意：当你游_____那个湖的时候必须小心。across“从表面穿过，跨越”；below“在……的下方”；over 是“在……上面”；through“从中间穿过”。表示游泳跨越湖从一边到另一边，要用 across。

考题在线答案

1. on time 2. A 3. C 4. A

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见151页)

一、单项选择

1. The performance was very exciting and _____ the audience raised a shout of joy.
A. every time
B. from time to time
C. at all times
D. at the same time

2. If the customer rings up for me again, please _____ the call to the sales department.
（苏州）【导学号：28374013】
A. run through
B. look through
C. go through
D. put through

3. There is something wrong with my DVD player. I'll have it _____.
A. fixed B. to fix C. fixes D. fixing

4. —Would you mind going to the park with us this Sunday?
—_____. I haven't been outdoors these days. I can't wait! （泰安）
A. Sorry, I can't B. Sure, I'd love to
C. Certainly not D. My pleasure

5. —Hello, may I speak to Mike?
—_____ （遂宁）
A. Sorry, he isn't in.
B. Sure, here you are.
C. OK, who are you?

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Task

A complaint letter

A Daniel has filled in a questionnaire at a robot shop. Do you agree with his answers? Discuss with your partner.

Questionnaire: Your ideal robot

What do you look for in a robot? Complete this questionnaire and return it to us. You will receive a special gift!

1. How long do you **expect**[1] your robot's batteries to last?
☐ 2 days ☐ 1 week ☑ 2 months

2. How long do you think your robot should work?
☐ 8 hours a day ☐ 12 hours a day
☑ 24 hours a day

3. What do you want your robot to help you with?
☑ homework ☐ cooking ☐ cleaning

4. How often do you think your robot should be checked?
☐ never ☐ every 3 months
☑ every 6 months

任务

一封投诉信

A 丹尼尔在机器人商店填了一份问卷。你同意他的回答吗？和你的同伴讨论一下。

问卷：你理想的机器人

你要找什么样的机器人？完成这份问卷并把它交还给我们。你将会收到一份特别的礼物！

1. 你希望你的机器人的电池能持续多久？
☐ 2天 ☐ 1周 ☑ 2个月

2. 你认为你的机器人应该工作多久？
☐ 每天8小时 ☐ 每天12小时
☑ 每天24小时

3. 你想要你的机器人帮助你做什么？
☑ 家庭作业 ☐ 做饭 ☐ 打扫

4. 你认为你的机器人应该多久检查一次？
☐ 从不 ☐ 每3个月
☑ 每6个月

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B **Daniel's robot has stopped working. He decided to write a complaint letter to the shop. Help Daniel complete his letter.**

Dear Sir/Madam.

Robot model number HUGO123BB

Two weeks ago, I bought a robot from your shop. However, I am not satisfied with it at all.

First of all[2], I am unhappy with its batteries. They last for one week **at most**[3], so I have to change them often. I think they should last for at least (1) _____. I think a robot should work (2) _____, and I want my robot (3) _____. However, this robot is very lazy. I need to give it instructions all the time. Otherwise, I need to do everything myself.

The quality of this robot is not **up to standard**[4] either. A good robot should only need checking (4) _____. My robot has already stopped working completely. I do not know **what is wrong with**[5] it.

I **regret**[6] having bought a robot like this. I would like to get my money back.

Yours faithfully,

Daniel Chen

C **The robot shop sent a reply to Daniel. Read the reply with Daniel.**

课文朗读C

Dear Mr Chen,

We are sorry to hear that you are not satisfied with your robot. We understand why you are so angry. We would like to send you a new robot. You will only need to put the batteries in to make it work.

Of course, you can have your money back if you would not accept our new product. However, we hope that you will give it a try. We are sure that you will like it. You are welcome to let us know whenever you are not satisfied with it.

Please tell us your decision. If the new robot is your choice, please let us know when we can send it to you.

We **look forward to**[7] hearing from you soon.

Yours sincerely,

Lin Fang

Manager

D **Suppose you are not satisfied with the robot you bought. You also want to write a complaint letter. You may use Daniel's complaint letter as a model.**

B 丹尼尔的机器人已经停止工作了。他决定给商店写一封投诉信。帮助丹尼尔完成他的信。

亲爱的先生/女士:

机器人模型号码 HUGO123BB

两周前我从你们商店买了一个机器人。然而，我对它一点也不满意。

首先，我对它的电池不满意。它们最多持续一周，所以我不得不经常更换电池。我认为它们应该至少持续 2 个月。我认为机器人应该一天工作 24 小时，而且我想让我的机器人帮我做家庭作业。可是，这个机器人很懒。我需要一直给它指令。否则，我就得自己做所有的事。

这个机器人的质量也未达到标准。一个好的机器人应该只需每 6 个月检查一次。我的机器人已经完全停止工作了。我不知道它出了什么毛病。

我后悔买了一个像这样的机器人。我想拿回我的钱。

你忠实的，

丹尼尔·陈

C 机器人商店给丹尼尔发来答复(信)。与丹尼尔读该答复(信)。

亲爱的陈先生:

我们很遗憾地听说你对你的机器人不满意。我们明白你为什么如此生气。我们想给你寄一个新的机器人。你将只需要把电池放进去来让它工作。

当然，如果你不接受我们的新产品，你可以拿回你的钱。可是，我们希望你会试一试它。我们相信你会喜欢它。无论什么时候你对它不满意，欢迎你让我们知道。

请告诉我们你的决定。如果你选择新的机器人，请让我们知道我们什么时候可以把它寄给你。

我们期待尽快收到你的来信。

你真诚的，

林芳

经理

D 设想你对你买的机器人不满意。你也想写一封投诉信。你可以用丹尼尔的投诉信作为例子。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Self-assessment

I have learnt	Details	Result
1. about a home robot.		
2. to use the new words to talk about how robots could help us.		
3. to use object clauses or simple sentences to express the same idea.		
4. some differences between British English and American English.		

Result: Perfect! Good! Not bad!

I need to spend more time on _____.

自我评价

我已学会/了解	细节	成绩
1. 关于居家机器人。		
2. 用生词来谈论机器人能怎样帮助我们。		
3. 用宾语从句或简单句来表达相同的观点。		
4. 英式英语和美式英语之间的一些差别。		

成绩：棒极了！ 好！ 不错！

我需要花更多的时间在_____。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶expect /ɪkˈspekt/ *v.* **预期，期盼，盼望**

考向：expect 多用作及物动词，可接名词、代词、动词不定式或 that 从句作宾语，也可接以动词不定式充当补足语的复合宾语。

eg:（凉山中考）My parents **expected** me to be the best. I don't want to let them down.
我的父母希望我是最好的，我不想让他们失望。

I **expect** I will be back on Sunday.
我预计我会在周日回来的。

【考题在线1】—Do you think our basketball team will win the match?
—Yes, we have better players. So I _____ them to win. （自贡）
A. hope B. help C. expect

点拨：本题用固定搭配法解题。考查动词的辨析。由语境可知，"我"期待我们的篮球队能赢得这场比赛。expect sb. to do sth. 期望某人做某事；而 hope 无此用法，其后跟动词不定式或 that 从句。

【考题在线2】—Has Jane done the washing yet?
—You cannot _____ her to do such a thing. （苏州改编）
A. want B. hope C. expect D. except

点拨：本题用固定搭配法解题。考查动词辨析。句意：——简已经洗完衣服了吗？——你不要期望她做这样的事情。"expect sb. to do sth."意为"期望某人做某事"，符合句意。

❷first of all 首先

eg: **First of all** she just smiled, and then she started to laugh.
最初她只是微笑，后来她开始大笑。

【考题在线3】—What rules do I have to follow while working here?
—_____, you must always wear your uniform.
A. By the way B. From then on
C. Believe it or not D. First of all

点拨：本题用辨析法解题。句意：——当在这儿工作时，我得遵守什么规则？——首先，你必须总是穿制服。by the way 顺便说一下，顺便问一下；from then on 从那时起；believe it or not 无论你信不信；first of all 首先。

❸at most 至多

考向：at most，意为"至多"，其反义短语为 at least，意为"至少"。

eg: It will take two hours **at most** to get there.
到达那里最多花费两小时。

We should brush our teeth **at least** twice a day. 我们每天应该至少刷两次牙。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

❹**up to standard 达到标准**

考向：表示“达到标准”用 up to standard，而表示“达不到标准”可用 not up to standard，也可用 below standard。

eg：Their work is **not up to standard.**
他们的工作不合格。
A can like this is considered **below standard.** 这样的罐头认为是不合格的。

❺**what is wrong with ……怎么了**

考向一：该句型与 What's the matter? 或 What's the trouble? 句意相同。

eg：—**What's wrong with** your bike?
你的自行车怎么了？
—It's broken. 它坏了。

考向二：该句型用于宾语从句中，其中的 what 就是句子的主语，因此句子的语序不变。

eg：I don't know **what's wrong with** my bike.
我不知道我的自行车怎么了。

❻**regret** /rɪ'gret/ *v.* **后悔；遗憾**

考向：regret 作动词，意为“后悔；遗憾”。其后接名词、代词、动名词或 that/wh-从句。

eg：If you don't do it now, you'll only **regret** it.
你如果现在不做，以后一定会后悔的。
He bitterly **regretted** ever having mentioned it. 他非常懊悔曾经提起那件事。
I deeply **regret** what I said.
我非常后悔说了那些话。

【考题在线 4】—Did you talk back to your mother when you were a child?
—Yes. But now I realize I was wrong. I really regret _____ that silly thing to my mum. （襄阳）
A. do B. to do C. doing D. did

点拨：考查非谓语动词的用法。句意为：“——当你是孩子的时候和你母亲顶嘴吗？——是的。但是现在我意识到我错了。我真的后悔对妈妈做了那种愚蠢的事。”regret to do 对要做的事遗憾（未做）；regret doing 对做过的事遗憾、后悔（已做）。根据句意可知是做过的事。

❼**look forward to 盼望，期盼**

eg：We are **looking forward to** meeting you soon. 我们正盼望早日见到你。

考向：【易错点】该短语中的 to 是介词，其后需要接名词或动名词，类似的短语还有 pay attention to（注意）、devote …to …（奉献）。

eg：You must **pay attention to** your study.
你必须专心学习。
Doctor Lin **devoted** himself **to** helping patients. 林医生致力于帮助病人。

【考题在线 5】**Girl**：I'm _____ the trip which we can go whenever we want to go.
Boy：You'll take me, and I'll take the money. （东营）
A. taking part in B. taking care of
C. looking back at D. looking forward to

点拨：本题用语境法解题。考查动词短语辨析。句意为“女孩：我_____我们什么时候想走就能走的旅行。男孩：你带着我，我带着钱。”take part in 参加；take care of 照顾；look back at 回顾；look forward to 期盼。由语境可知，女孩期盼这种旅行。

【考题在线 6】The time he has devoted in the past years _____ the disabled is now considered to be _____ great value _____ him. 【导学号：28374014】
A. to help; of; for B. to helping; /; to
C. to help; in; of D. to helping; of; to

点拨：本题用固定搭配法解题。句意：他过去用于帮助残疾人的时间现在被认为对他有重要意义。devote sth. to doing sth.（to 是介词，后跟动名词作宾语），把……用于……；of great value to …对……有重要意义。

考题在线答案
1. C 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. D 6. D

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

写作方法：“三段论法”写“小故事”

第一段：介绍	简单介绍自己何时买的某物，对其不满意
第二段：主体	该物存在的主要问题及你期望的理想的状况
第三段：结论	做法

易错点提示

注意正确表达该物出现的故障以及你自己的要求。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

参考词汇和句式

短语	· in order to　· be satisfied with · at first　· go wrong · in a mess　· as a result · and so on
句式	1. …bought … 2. It made the house … 3. …how to deal with … 4. As a result,….

典例

请根据以下要点，用英语写一篇80词左右的小故事，要求语句通顺、意思连贯，可适当发挥。要点如下：

1. 刘女士工作很忙，为了有更多的空余时间，上个月她从一家超市买了一台机器人。

2. 起初，机器人能帮她做许多家务事，洗衣（laundry）、做饭、熨烫衣服（iron the clothes）等。刘女士对它很满意。

3. 可是有一天机器人出现了故障，不能正常工作了。

4. 它把房间搞得一塌糊涂，刘女士对它很生气。

5. 她不知道怎样来处理这台机器人。结果，刘女士……

【范文欣赏】

Miss Liu was very busy. In order to have more spare time, she bought a robot from a supermarket last month.

At first, the robot could do lots of housework for her. It did the laundry, cooked meals, ironed the clothes and so on. Miss Liu was very satisfied with it. But one day, the robot went wrong and couldn't work properly. The house was in a mess, so Miss Liu was very angry.

She didn't know how to deal with it. As a result, she decided to return it to the supermarket.

【点评】

本文运用了“三段论法”写“小故事”。1. 简单介绍（简单介绍刘女士买机器人的原因）；2. 主体部分（介绍该机器人给刘女士带来的便利与烦恼）；3. 结论（刘女士决定退回机器人）。

添彩点：1. 运用了一个重要的结构：…how to deal with …。

2. 运用了几个比较高级的短语：in order to，at first，be satisfied with，go wrong 及 as a result。

“写作针对性训练”见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分

（答案见152页）

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. Apple Corporation's _____ (produce) are very popular all over the world.
2. I easily give in to him, and I've been _____ (regret) it ever since.
3. —Mum, my watch _____ (stop).
   —It needs fixing and I will have it fixed this afternoon.
4. The fashionable mobile phones you look forward to _____ (sell) well yesterday.
5. It is our duty to prevent such an accident from _____ (happen) again.

二、完成下列句子

6. 当时教室里最多20人。
   There were _____ twenty people in the classroom then.
7. 这些产品均达到标准。
   These products are all _____.
8. 首先，让我告诉你们一些好消息。
   _____, let me tell you some good news.
9. 打扰了，你知道我的电脑怎么了吗？
   Excuse me, do you know _____?
10. 我们盼望不久收到你的来信。
    We look forward to _____ you soon.

三、重点知识浓缩

Mr Jiang is a manager. He o_____[11] a robot from a robot shop. The robot could do many things for him. For example, the robot could iron his business suit s_____[12]. In general the robot s_____[13] Mr Jiang's n_____[14]. But later the robot c_____[15] a virus and no longer worked p_____[16]. Sometimes, he found his flat in a c_____[17] mess: food was l_____[18] on the bed; milk was s_____[19] in the rubbish bin; coins, bills and his p_____[20] papers were spread all over the floor. He had to return it to the robot shop at last.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 Life on Mars

词汇表听写

学习方法创新

课文阅读与写作技法	⚠画龙点睛法(98 页)
写作方法	◇"优劣对比法"写"火星生活的利与弊"(115 页)
解题方法	1语境法(154 页) 2联系上下文法(143 页) 3辨析法(91,109,111,142,152,153 页) 4题眼法(114,154 页) 5固定句型法(91 页) 6固定短语法(142,152 页) 7语法判定法(97,143,153,154 页) 8固定搭配法(113,114,154 页) 9句意理解法(98,102,103,104,110,152 页) 10情景交际法(153 页) 11逻辑推理法(152 页)

学习目标梳理

单元话题	火星生活		
必背词汇	课时	单词	短语
	Period 1: Comic strip & Welcome to the unit	dried food *n.* 干粮 sleeping bag *n.* 睡袋	get to 到达,接触到 dream about 梦想 take sth. with sb. 把某物带在某人身边
	Period 2: Reading	planet *n.* 行星 polluted *adj.* 被污染的 rapid *adj.* 快的,迅速的 increase *vt. &n.* 增加 passenger *n.* 乘客 uncomfortable *adj.* 使人不舒服的;不舒适的 tasty *adj.* 味道好的 specially *adv.* 专门地,特地 compare *vt. & vi.* 比较 rapidly *adv.* 快地,迅速地	in the form of 以……的形式 more and more 越来越 large numbers of 大量的 with the development of technology 随着科技的发展 in spacecraft 乘宇宙飞船 at the speed of light 以光速 compare with 同……比较 in some ways 在某些方面 connect ...to ... 把……与……相连 make friends with 与……交朋友 fly to 飞到…… be of great help to ... 对……有很大帮助
	Period 3: Grammar	circle *vi. & vt.* 围绕;将……圈起来 agreement *n.* 一致,同意 possibility *n.* 可能性 stranger *n.* 外来者,陌生人	go into outer space 进外太空 move to 移居到…… be different from 与……不同 the same as 与……一样
	Period 4: Integrated skills & Study skills	risk *n.* 风险,危险	start with 以……开始 be worried about 担心…… be afraid of 害怕……

宋德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

必背词汇	Period 5: Task &Self-assessment	electronic *adj.* 电子的	a guide to … ……的指南
句型	①How do you like …? 你觉得……怎么样? ②I hope so. 我希望如此。 ③I'm not sure if … 我不确定是否……		
语法	简单句和复合句之间的转换(二)		

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

课时导入

I. 课文原文及译文

Comic strip

课文朗读 Comic strip

1. **Hobo**: Wow, I've never thought about travelling into space.
   Eddie: **Me neither**[1].
2. **Hobo**: **How do you like**[2] life on Mars?
   Eddie: I hate it.
3. **Hobo**: Why do you hate it? I thought you liked Mars.
   Eddie: It's this helmet.
4. **Eddie**: I can't get to my food.

The future

Daniel is thinking about life in the future. Maybe people will live on other planets. Daniel wants to find out more about living on Mars.

Task

Make a spidergram and then write a guide to living on Mars.

Life in space

A **Daniel is dreaming about visiting another planet. What should he take with him? Write the name of the item under each picture.**

air tank	computer
dried food	power pack
sleeping bag	space helmet
special boots	tent

B **Daniel is talking to Amy about living on Mars. What would it be like? Work in pairs and discuss with your partner. Use the conversation below as a model.**

课文朗读B

卡通漫画

1. 霍波：哇，我从未想过到太空旅行。
   埃迪：我也没有。
2. 霍波：你觉得火星上的生活怎么样?
   埃迪：我讨厌它。
3. 霍波：你为什么讨厌它? 我原以为你喜欢火星的。
   埃迪：是这个头盔。
4. 埃迪：我不能吃到我的食物了。

将来

丹尼尔正在思考将来的生活。或许人们将会住在其他星球上。丹尼尔想弄清楚更多有关在火星上生活的情况。

任务

制作一张蜘蛛状表格，然后写一份火星生活指南。

太空生活

A 丹尼尔正在幻想参观另一个星球。他应该带些什么? 在每幅图片下面写下物品的名称。

氧气罐	电脑
干粮	电源包
睡袋	宇航员头盔
专用的靴子	帐篷

B 丹尼尔正在与埃米谈论生活在火星上的情况。它将会是什么样的呢? 结对练习，并与你的同伴谈论。用下面的对话作为示例。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Daniel: What would it be like to live on Mars?
Amy: There's less gravity on Mars. We'd probably need to wear special boots.
Daniel: Yes. And we might need sleeping bags too.
Amy: I agree. Also, there's no fruit or vegetables, so we would have to eat dried food.
Daniel: Well ... that sounds quite boring! But there would be no pollution on Mars.
Amy: **I hope so**[3].

丹尼尔：生活在火星上会是什么样的呢？
埃米：火星上重力小。我们可能需要穿上专用的靴子。
丹尼尔：是的。而且我们可能还需要睡袋。
埃米：我同意。而且没有水果和蔬菜，因此我们将不得不吃干粮。
丹尼尔：哦……听起来太无聊了！但是火星上会没有污染。
埃米：我希望是这样。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶[高频] Me neither. 我也不。

考向一：口语中说 me either 或 me neither，均表示“我也不……”，主要用于延续前面的否定信息（两者一般可互换）。

eg：—I can't swim.
我不会游泳。
—Me either.
我也不会。
—I don't want to go to a political meeting.
我不想参加一个政治集会。
—Me neither!
我也不想！

考向二：口语中说 me too，其意为“我也一样”，主要用于延续前面的肯定信息。

eg：—I like potato chips.
我喜欢（吃）薯条。
—Me too.
我也是。
—I'm going home.
我要回家了。
—Me too.
我也是。

【考题在线 1】 —I don't like showers or windy weather.
—_____. （潍坊）
A. Me too　　B. Me neither
C. So I do　　D. Neither I do

点拨：句意：——我不喜欢阵雨或有风的天气。——_____。Me too. 我也如此；Me neither. 我也不；So I do. 我确实是这样（前文是肯定）；Neither I do. 我确实是这样（前文是否定）。Me too. 和 So I do. 都是对上文是肯定句的一种反应；而 Me neither. 用于口语，是对上文是否定句的一种反应，表示“我也不”，Neither I do. 是对上文否定句的认同，表示“我确实如此”。由前句可知，此句意思应为“我也不喜欢这样的天气。”

❷[高频] How do you like ...?
你觉得……怎么样？

考向：相当于 What do you think of ...?

eg：**—How do you like** this film?
你觉得这部电影怎么样？
—It's wonderful.
很精彩。

【考题在线 2】 完成下列句子：
你觉得这本书怎么样？
_____ do you _____ this book?
= _____ do you _____ _____ this book?

点拨：本题用固定句型法解题。考查固定句型“你觉得……怎么样？”用 How do you like ...? 或 What do you think of ...?

【考题在线 3】 —What do you think of the life in the country?
—_____.
A. Wonderful　　B. No problem
C. Good luck　　D. That's right

点拨：本题用辨析法解题。句意：——你认为乡村的生活怎么样？——_____。Wonderful “精彩的”；No problem “没问题”；Good luck “好运”；That's right “那就对了”。由句意知，只有 Wonderful 才能描述生活怎么样。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

③I hope so. 我希望是这样。

考向：I hope so. 意为“我希望是这样”，是英语口语中常用的一个短句，表示肯定对方的意见或观点，其否定形式为 I hope not. 意为“我希望不是这样”。

eg：—Will it be fine tomorrow?
明天会天晴吗？
—I hope so.
我希望如此。
—Will it rain tomorrow?
明天会下雨吗？
—I hope not.
我希望不要下雨。

【考题在线 4】—Do you think it's going to rain this afternoon?
—_____ We're just planning to have a picnic later this afternoon. （武威）
A. I hope not.
B. I expect so.
C. Yes, it was.
D. No, I won't.

考题在线答案
1. B
2. How, like, What, think of
3. A 4. A

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见 152 页)

单项选择

1. —Which do you prefer, swimming or surfing?
—_____. I like scuba-diving.
A. Both B. Either
C. Neither D. None

2. —There is too much salt in Chinese diet.
—Right. The WHO says only 1.5 grams of salt _____ for each man every day.
A. is needed B. needs
C. will need D. has needed

3. —How do you like your tea?
—_____.
A. As it comes, please
B. Very much
C. I do not like tea
D. It tastes nice

4. —Playing video games is a waste of time.
—I can't agree more. There are _____ meaningful things to do. （苏州）
A. the most B. the least
C. more D. less

5. I will call you as soon as I arrive in Guilin. （六盘水）
A. get to B. reach to
C. get D. arrive

6. —Do you plan to watch a talent show or a sports show tonight?
—_____. I can't stand them. I plan to watch a sitcom. （临沂）【导学号：28374015】
A. Neither B. Both
C. None D. Either

7. —What a heavy rain! Will it last long?
—_____. We're going on a trip to the West Lake in Hangzhou tomorrow.
A. Not at all
B. Of course not
C. I hope not
D. I hope so

8. —I really love this band!
—_____ I've got every CD they've made so far. （南昌）
A. Me, too!
B. Sounds good.
C. I disagree.
D. I hope so.

9. —Three-D printing technology could be used to build a house in less than 24 hours.
—It _____ amazing. It's my first time to get to know the news. （镇江）
A. looks B. smells
C. sounds D. tastes

10. —Must I dress up as the Monkey King?
—No, you _____. You can choose whatever you like. （南通）
A. can't B. mustn't
C. shouldn't D. needn't

基德英语

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Reading

课时导入 拓展阅读

I. 课文原文及译文

A life on another planet

课文朗读A

Daniel wants to find out more about life in space in the future. He has found the following article by a famous scientist who thinks humans could live on Mars by the next century.

Moving to Mars

Some people believe that humans could live on the planet Mars by the year 2100. Our own planet, the Earth, is becoming more and more crowded and **polluted**[1] because of the **rapid**[2] increase in population. It is hoped that people could start **all over again**[3] and build a better world on Mars. Here is what life there could be like.

At present, our spacecraft are too slow to carry **large numbers of**[4] passengers to Mars—it would take months. With the development of technology, by the year 2100, the journey might only take about 20 minutes in spacecraft that travel **at the speed of**[5] light! However, the spacecraft would travel so fast that the journey to Mars might be quite **uncomfortable**[6]. Many people would feel ill.

Humans cannot survive without water, oxygen or food. So far, nobody knows whether there would be enough water or oxygen on Mars for people there. Moreover, scientists are not sure whether plants could grow on Mars. Food would most probably be **in the form of**[7] pills and would not be so **tasty**[8].

Gravity could be another problem. The gravity on Mars is only about three-eighths of that on the Earth. People would have to wear boots that are **specially**[9] designed to prevent themselves from floating off into space.

Compared[10] with life on the Earth, life on Mars would be better in some ways. People would have more space. They might live in houses with huge comfortable rooms. Also, robots would do most of their work so that they could have more time to relax.

There would probably be no schools on Mars. Every student would have a computer at home connected to an interplanetary network. They would study at online schools with "e-teachers".

Life on Mars would be interesting as well as challenging[11].

A 另一个星球上的生活

丹尼尔想弄清楚更多关于将来在太空生活的情况。他发现了一位著名科学家写的下面这篇文章，这位科学家认为到下个世纪人类能生活在火星上。

迁往火星

一些人相信到 2100 年时，人类能住在火星上。我们自己的星球，地球，因为人口的迅速增长正变得越来越拥挤而且受到了越来越多的污染。人们有望能够在火星上重新开始，建设一个更好的世界。这里（描述的）是那的生活可能是什么样子。

目前，我们的宇宙飞船太慢了，无法运送大批的乘客去火星——因为要花几个月的时间。随着技术的发展，到 2100 年，乘坐以光速飞行的宇宙飞船，行程或许只要大约 20 分钟！然而，宇宙飞船将行驶得太快以至于到火星的旅途可能会相当的不舒服。许多人会感觉不适。

人类没有水、氧气和食物不能生存。到目前为止，没有人知道火星上是否有足够的水或氧气给那里的人们。而且，科学家们不能确定植物能否在火星上生长。食物很大可能将是以药片的形式存在，而且味道将没那么可口。

重力可能是另一个问题。火星上的重力大约只有地球上的八分之三。人们将必须穿上特制的靴子以阻止他们自己飘入太空。

与地球上的生活相比，火星上的生活在某些方面要好些。人们会有更多的空间。他们可能会住在具有又大又舒服的房间的房子里。并且，机器人将会做他们的大部分工作以便他们能有更多的时间放松。

火星上可能会没有学校。每个学生家里都会有一台电脑与星际网络连接。他们将在网上学校与"电子老师"一起学习。

火星上的生活将不仅有趣，还很有挑战性。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B Life in the future

B1 Daniel needs to check the meanings of some words in the article. Help him match the words on the left with the meanings on the right. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

1. crowded (line 3) _____
2. rapid (line 4) _____
3. population (line 4) _____
4. all over again (line 5) _____
5. passenger (line 8) _____
6. tasty (line 18) _____
7. specially (line 21) _____
8. compare (line 23) _____

a. for one purpose
b. a second time from the beginning
c. decide in what way things are similar or different
d. having a nice taste
e. full of people
f. happening in a short period of time
g. a person who rides in a car, bus, train, etc. but does not drive it
h. the total number of people in an area, a country, etc.

B2 Daniel is looking for more information on the Internet. Below are the keywords he used and the links he got from the search engine. Match the keywords with the links. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

1. crowded planet f
2. spacecraft _____
3. speed boots _____
4. space houses _____
5. robot on Mars _____
6. online teacher _____

a. Need someone to teach you any time, any place?
b. Living in a space house is fun ....
c. All about the newest spacecraft that travel in space ....
d. Our shoes can make you walk faster!
e. Robots could be of great help to people on Mars ....
f. The population on the Earth is still increasing rapidly ....

B 将来的生活

B1 丹尼尔需要查阅文章中一些词语的意思。帮助他将左边的词语与右边的意思搭配起来。在空白处写出正确的字母。

1. 拥挤的 （第3行）_____
2. 迅速的 （第4行）_____
3. 人口 （第4行）_____
4. 重新 （第5行）_____
5. 乘客 （第8行）_____
6. 美味的 （第18行）_____
7. 专门地，特地 （第21行）_____
8. 比较 （第23行）_____

a. 为了一个目的
b. 第二次从头开始
c. 决定在什么方面事物是相似的或不同的
d. 有一个好的味道
e. 挤满了人
f. 在很短的时间内发生
g. 一个乘坐轿车、公共汽车、火车等，但不驾驶的人
h. 一个地区、一个国家等范围里的人口总数

B2 丹尼尔正在网上查找更多的信息。下面是他用的关键词和他从搜索引擎中获取的链接。把关键词和链接搭配起来。在空白处写上正确的字母。

1. 拥挤的行星 f
2. 宇宙飞船 _____
3. 极速靴子 _____
4. 太空之家 _____
5. 火星上的机器人 _____
6. 在线教师 _____

a. 需要有人在任何时候、任何地方来教你吗?
b. 住在太空之家是有趣的……
c. 所有关于在太空旅行的最新的宇宙飞船……
d. 我们的靴子能使你走得更快!
e. 机器人对火星上的人们有极大的帮助……
f. 地球上的人口仍在迅速增长……

基德莱

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B3 **Daniel is telling Simon about the article. Simon is very interested and is asking many questions. Help Daniel answer Simon's questions. Circle the correct letters.**

1. Why would people move to Mars?
a. The Earth is crowded and polluted.
b. People want to make friends with those from another planet.
c. Flying to Mars would be fun.
2. How long does it take to fly to Mars at present?
a. Hours.
b. Months.
c. Years.
3. What would the flight to Mars be like by the year 2100?
a. Fast and comfortable.
b. Fast but uncomfortable.
c. Slow but comfortable.
4. What would food on Mars be like?
a. Very tasty.
b. Very sweet.
c. Not very tasty.
5. Would gravity be a problem on Mars?
a. No, it's not a problem.
b. Yes. Many people would get lost.
c. Yes, and people would wear special boots.
6. Where might people live on Mars?
a. In houses with huge rooms.
b. On spacecraft.
c. In sleeping bags.
7. What would schools be like on Mars?
a. Very small.
b. Online schools.
c. Like those on the Earth.
8. What does the writer think of life on Mars?
a. Better than life on the Earth.
b. Worse than life on the Earth.
c. There would be good and bad points.

B4 **Daniel is making a list of the differences between life on the Earth today and life on Mars in 2100. Help him complete his list. Use the information from the article on pages 52 and 53.**

B3 丹尼尔正在给西蒙讲述这篇文章。西蒙很感兴趣，正在问许多问题。帮助丹尼尔回答西蒙的问题。把正确的字母圈出来。

1. 为什么人们将搬到火星上？
a. 地球很拥挤，而且受到了污染。
b. 人们想要和来自另一个行星上的人交朋友。
c. 飞去火星将会很有趣。
2. 目前飞到火星需要花多长时间？
a. 数小时。
b. 数月。
c. 数年。
3. 到 2100 年，到火星的航行将会是什么样子的？
a. 又快又舒服。
b. 快但不舒服。
c. 慢但很舒服。
4. 火星上的食物将是什么样子的？
a. 非常美味。
b. 非常甜。
c. 不是非常美味。
5. 在火星上重力将是一个问题吗？
a. 不，它不是一个问题。
b. 是的。许多人将会迷路。
c. 是的，而且人们将会穿专用的靴子。
6. 在火星上，人们将住在哪里？
a. 在有大房间的房子里。
b. 在宇宙飞船上。
c. 在睡袋里。
7. 火星上的学校会是什么样子的？
a. 非常小。
b. 网上学校。
c. 像地球上的学校一样。
8. 作者觉得火星上的生活怎么样？
a. 比地球上的生活更好。
b. 比地球上的生活更差。
c. 有好的方面，也有坏的方面。

B4 丹尼尔正在制作一张关于现在地球上与 2100 年火星上的生活的不同点的列表。帮助他完成列表。用文章中第 52 页和 53 页的信息。

菜德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Life on the Earth today	Life on Mars in 2100
It is polluted and crowded.	It would be clean and have lots of space.
Spacecraft are slow.	
There is enough water and oxygen.	
There are many kinds of tasty food.	
Gravity is not a problem for us.	
Many people live in small flats.	
People have little time to relax.	
Students study at real schools.	

今天地球上的生活	2100年火星上的生活
它被污染了而且很拥挤。	它将是干净的并有许多空间。
宇宙飞船很慢。	
有足够的水和氧气。	
有许多种可口的食物。	
重力对我们来说不是一个问题。	
许多人住在小的公寓里。	
人们几乎没有时间放松。	
学生在真正的学校里学习。	

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶[高频] polluted /pəˈluːtɪd/ *adj.* 被污染的

eg: **Polluted** water is not suitable for drinking.
被污染的水不适合饮用。

拓展 pollute 动词，意为“污染”。pollution 名词，意为“污染”。

eg: We should not **pollute** our rivers with waste.
我们不应用废弃物污染我们的河川。
Waste water from the factory is the main cause of the **pollution** of local rivers.
那家工厂的污水是当地河流污染的主要原因。

【考题在线1】 根据句意及音标提示，填写单词：
What can we do to cut down air _____ /pəˈluːʃn/?
点拨：由音标可知为单词 pollution，表示“污染”是不可数名词。

❷rapid /ˈræpɪd/ *adj.* 快的，迅速的

eg: The student shows **rapid** progress in his studies.
这个学生学习上进步很快。

拓展 rapid 的副词形式是 rapidly，意为“快地，迅速地”。

eg: He was **rapidly** leaving the others behind.
他迅速地把其他人甩在后面。

❸all over again 再一次，重新

eg: Please read the last sentence **all over again**.
请把最后一句再读一遍。

拓展 all over 还有“遍及”的意思。

eg: The water is **all over** the floor.
地板上全是水。

❹[高频] large numbers of 大量的，许多的

eg: At the moment, **large numbers of** foreigners are learning Chinese.
现在许多外国人正在学汉语。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考向:[重点][辨析]a number of 与 the number of:

a number of 意思是“一些,若干”(=some),后接可数名词复数或代词,谓语动词用复数形式。a number of 词组中还可以加入形容词表示数量大或小等(例如:a large/small number of ...许多/少数……	**A number of** my friends think I should take a holiday. 我的一些朋友认为我应该休假。 **A large number of** people were injured in the earthquake. 许多人在地震中受伤了。
the number of ... 意思是“…… 的数字/数目”,介词 of 同其后名词构成介词短语,修饰 the number. 当它作主语时,谓语动词用单数。	**The number of** students is about twenty. 学生人数大约是 20 人。

速记小筏

一语辨异: A large number of people took part in the 10,000-metre race, but only a number of them kept on running to the end. The number of them is 16.
许多人参加了 10000 米跑,但只有一些人坚持跑到最后。他们一共有 16 人。
★a large number of 大量的
★a number of 一些
★the number of……的数目

【考题在线 2】The number of the volunteers _____ 100 now. And a small number of them _____ already gone to the workplace. (南充)
A. is, have B. are, have
C. is, are D. is, has
点拨: 本题用语法判定法解题。考查主谓一致。the number of 表示“……的数量”作主语时,谓语动词用单数;而 a number of 意为“许多;大量”作主语时,谓语动词用复数。

5 at the speed of ... 以……的速度
eg: That night he drove the car **at the speed of** 200 km/h.
那天夜里他以每小时 200 公里的速度开车。
拓展 at speed 意为“飞速,快速”。
eg: She finished typewriting the letter **at speed**.
她迅速打好了那封信。

6 uncomfortable /ʌnˈkʌmftəbl/ *adj.* **不舒服的**
eg: If your shoes are too large or too small, you will feel **uncomfortable.** 如果你的鞋子太大或太小,你都会感到不舒服。
考向: uncomfortable 的副词形式是 uncomfortably,意为“不舒服地”。uncomfortable 的反义词是 comfortable,意为“舒服的”,其副词形式是 comfortably,意为“舒服地”。
eg: Neither chair is **comfortable**.
两把椅子坐起来都不舒服。
He can **comfortably** afford the extra expense.
他支付这些额外的费用毫无问题。
He shifted **uncomfortably** in his chair.
他在他的椅子上不舒服地动来动去。

【考题在线 3】根据句意及汉语提示,拼写单词:
It rained three days. The bad weather made me _____(不舒服的). (荆门)
点拨: 本题用语法判定法解题。句意:下了三天的雨。糟糕的天气让我不舒服。make sb. + 形容词,意为“使得某人……”。

7 in the form of 以……的形式
eg: The food in space is **in the form of** pills.
太空的食品是以药丸的形式(存在的)。

8 tasty /ˈteɪsti/ *adj.* **味道好的**
eg: These pancakes made by my mother are really **tasty**. 我妈妈做的这些煎饼非常好吃。
考向: 其动词形式与名词形式均是 taste,意思分别为“品尝”,“味道”。
eg: That's the best wine I've ever **tasted.**
那是我喝过的最好的酒。
The food **tastes** good.
这食品尝起来好极了。
I've got a cold and I have lost my sense of **taste**. 我感冒了,尝不出味道。

【考题在线 4】—The oranges _____ sweet.
—Of course. They are from Yongxing, Chenzhou. (莱芜)
A. taste B. eat C. drink


方法真题练:句意理解法

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨：本题用句意理解法解题。考查系动词。句意：——那些橘子尝起来很甜。——当然。它们来自郴州永兴。由空处后的形容词 sweet 可知，前面应用连系动词而不用行为动词 eat 或 drink；taste 作连系动词意为“尝起来”。

⑨**specially** /ˈspeʃəli/ *adv.* **专门地，特地**

eg：I made this **specially** for your birthday.
我特意为你生日做了这个。

考向一：其形容词形式是 special，意为“专门的，特别的，特殊的”。

eg：She is a **special** friend of mine.
她是我一个特别的朋友。
We have a **special** offer for our regular patrons.
我们对我们的老顾客有一个特别的优惠。

考向二：[辨析] especially 与 specially：

especially	副词，意为“尤其，特别”，通常用来对前面所述的事情进行进一步的说明或补充。
specially	副词，意为“专门地；特地”，表示“不是为了别的，而只是为了……”，强调唯一目的。

eg：She likes all subjects, **especially** English.
她喜欢所有的学科，尤其是英语。
The boy came here **specially** to say sorry to her. 这个男孩特意来这里向她道歉。

⑩[高频] **compare** /kəmˈpeə(r)/ *v.* **比较**

eg：The police **compared** the suspect's fingerprints with those found at the crime scene.
警察将嫌疑犯的指纹和在犯罪现场发现的指纹进行了对比。


知识微课：compare

考向：[重点] 固定短语 compare … to 意为“将……比作，与……相比较”；compare with …，意为“与……相比较”。

eg：Life is poetically **compared to** the morning dew.
在诗歌中，人生被比作朝露。
I **compared** the copy **with** the original, but there was not much difference.
我比较了复印件和原件，但是差别不是很大。

【考题在线5】用所给词的适当形式填空：
_____ (compare) with the older model, the new robot costs less but lasts longer.

点拨：本题用句意理解法解题。句意：与比较老的型号相比较，这款新的机器人花钱更少但寿命更长。表示“被比较”应该用过去分词作状语。

⑪**画龙点睛法**

所谓画龙点睛，本出自古代画坛典故，是指先画好龙身，最后在眼眶里点上眼珠儿。作文中的画龙点睛，是一种比喻说法，就是在关键地方用上精辟的词句点明主题，从而使内容更加生动有力。可见，它是文章主旨的聚焦，是作者智慧的结晶，是感染和激励读者的源泉。画龙点睛的方法，常用的是纵深引导法，就是通过联想或想象，由此及彼，由表及里，引申挖掘，使文章陡然增色。

考题在线答案
1. pollution 2. A
3. uncomfortable
4. A 5. Compared

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见152页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示拼写单词

1. We must _____ (提高) production levels.
2. _____ (迅速的) learning: Learn to speak a new language in 12 weeks!
3. To make the city less _____ (被污染的), the government has decided to close the paper factory.
4. The car is _____ (专门地) designed for the president.
5. Mars is one of the _____ (行星) of the solar system and it goes round the sun.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. The fish on the table seems _____ (taste) than what you cooked yesterday.
7. _____ (compare) with the life in the past, today's life is better in many ways.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

8. Earth is becoming more and more _____ (crowd).

9. The long journey on the bus may be _____ (comfort), but you can enjoy the nice views along the road.

10. He doesn't know what he should pay attention to _____ (form) a good study habit.

三、单项选择

11. —Natural disasters are dangerous!
—Yes, _____ earthquake that happened in that area killed _____ number of people.
A. the; the B. the; a
C. an; the D. an; an

12. The rocket will travel to Mars _____ a speed of over 25,000 miles per hour.
A. at B. by
C. with D. for

13. _____ of the students are going to visit the factory next week.
A. Three fifth
B. Third fifths
C. Three fives
D. Three fifths

14. Foods _____ as _____ as they are today.
A. will be not; tasty
B. will not be; tasty
C. will be not; taste
D. will not be; taste

15. —How many workers are there in your factory, Mr. Brown?
—_____ workers in our factory _____ more than _____.
A. The number of; is; two hundreds
B. The number of; is; two hundred
C. A number of; are; two hundreds
D. A number of; are; two hundred

16. When you _____ yourself with others, you miss the wonder of who you are. (扬州)
A. compare
B. communicate
C. contact
D. connect

17. In our school library there _____ a number of books and the number of them _____ growing larger and larger. (眉山)【导学号: 28374016】
A. is; are B. has; is
C. are; is D. have; are

18. —Excuse me, do you know _____?
—On foot. (青岛)
A. what Alice came to do
B. where Alice came from
C. how Alice came here
D. who Alice came with

19. There _____ a basketball game between these two grades in the gym this afternoon. (武威)
A. will
B. is going to have
C. is going to be
D. will have

20. In Switzerland, things like glass and plastic _____ into different groups and then recycled. (盐城)
A. separate B. separated
C. are separated D. is separated

四、完成下列句子

21. 他干得太差劲了,我只好亲自重做。
He did the work so badly that I had to do it _____.

22. 他是个言行如一的朋友。
He is a friend in word _____ in deed.

23. 你可以把机器连在你的高保真音响上。
You can _____ the machine _____ your hi-fi.

24. 这些猫在某些方面有点像狗。
These cats are rather like dogs _____.

25. 如果你仔细看看墙报的话,你就会发现有好几篇文章是以诗歌的形式写成的。
If you take a close look at the wall newspaper, you will find that quite a few _____ _____ poems.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Grammar

Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Sentences（Ⅱ）

A Using adverbial clauses or simple sentences

We can rewrite some adverbial clauses in simple sentences with prepositional phrases beginning with **at the age of**, **because of** and **without**.

Neil Armstrong received his student pilot's licence **when he was 16.**

→Neil Armstrong received his student pilot's licence **at the age of** 16.

People might float in space **because the gravity is low**[1].

→People might float in space **because of the low gravity.**

Humans cannot survive **if there is no food, water or oxygen.**

→Humans cannot survive **without food, water or oxygen.**

Learning about outer space

Daniel is writing about visiting another planet. Help him rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets.

1. Neil Armstrong took his first flight when he was only six. （at the age of）

_____

2. Yuri Gagarin became the first man to go into outer space at the age of 27. （when）

_____

3. People might move to another planet in the future because the population on the Earth is increasing rapidly. （because of）

_____

4. If there is no fresh food, meals will not be as tasty as they are today. （without）

_____

5. It would be funny to play football on Mars because of the low gravity. （because）

_____

6. Without special boots, you cannot walk on Mars. （if ... not）

_____

B Using object clauses or simple sentences

We can rewrite some object clauses in simple sentences with prepositions like **of** and **about**.

句子（二）

A 使用状语从句或简单句

用以 at the age of，because of 和 without 开头的介词短语，我们可以把一些状语从句改为简单句。

尼尔·阿姆斯特朗 16 岁时就拿到了学生飞行员执照。

→尼尔·阿姆斯特朗 16 岁时就拿到了他的学生飞行员执照。

因为重力小，人们可能会在太空中飘浮。

→因为低重力，人们可能会在太空中飘浮。

如果没有食物、水或氧气，人类就不能生存。

→没有食物、水或氧气，人类就不能生存。

了解外太空

丹尼尔正在写关于参观另一个行星的事。用括号中的词帮助他改写句子。

1. 尼尔·阿姆斯特朗在只有 6 岁时进行了他的第一次飞行。（在……岁时）

_____

2. 在 27 岁时，尤里·加加林成为第一个进入外太空的人。（当……时）

_____

3. 将来人们可能搬到另一个行星上去，因为地球上的人口在迅速增长。（因为）

_____

4. 如果没有新鲜的食物，饭菜就不会和今天的一样美味。（没有）

_____

5. 因为低重力，在火星上踢足球将是滑稽的。（因为）

_____

6. 没有专用的靴子，你不能在火星上行走。（如果……不）

_____

B 使用宾语从句或简单句

我们可以用有像 of 和 about 这样的介词的简单句来改写一些宾语从句。

基德

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

The smell of the pills reminds them **that food on the Earth is tasty.**

→The smell of the pills reminds them **of the tasty food on the Earth.**

Are they sure **that space travel will be very fast**?

→Are they sure **about the fast speed of space travel**?

About the planet Mars

Millie knows little about the planet Mars. She is asking Daniel for more information. Rewrite Millie's sentences using the words in brackets.

Millie: (1) Are you aware how far Mars is away from the Sun?

Daniel: Yes. Mars is about 142,000,000 miles away from the Sun. It takes Mars about two Earth years to **circle**[2] around the Sun once.

Millie: (2) Are scientists in **agreement**[3] that living on Mars would be possible for humans in the future?

Daniel: No. But they're working hard to learn more about Mars.

Millie: (3) Do they think that the low gravity on Mars might be a problem?

Daniel: Yes, they do.

Millie: (4) Are you aware what transport could be like on Mars?

Daniel: It could be much better than that on the Earth. However, scientists aren't sure whether people could grow plants on Mars.

Millie: (5) I wonder how many people would like to move to Mars. (6) I think people should know that life on Mars would be different from **that**[4] on the Earth.

1. Are you aware _____ (distance)?
2. Do scientists agree _____ (**possibility**[5])?
3. Have they thought _____ (problem)?
4. Are you aware _____ (transport)?
5. I wonder _____ (number).
6. I think people should know _____ (differences).

C Using defining relative clauses or simple sentences

We can rewrite some defining relative clauses in simple sentences with prepositions like **with** and **in**.

People might live in houses **which have huge comfortable rooms.**

→People might live in houses **with huge comfortable rooms.**

On Mars you might see people **who wear special boots.**

→On Mars you might see people **in special boots.**

药片的味道使他们想起地球上的食物是美味的。

→药片的味道使他们想起地球上美味的食物。

他们确信太空旅行将非常快吗?

→他们确信太空旅行将非常快吗?

关于火星

米莉对火星知之甚少。她正在向丹尼尔询问更多的信息。用括号中的词改写米莉的句子。

米莉:(1)你知道火星离太阳多远吗?

丹尼尔:是的。火星离太阳大约142 000 000英里。环绕太阳一次要花费火星大约两个地球年。

米莉:(2)科学家们对人类将来有可能生活在火星上意见一致吗?

丹尼尔:不。但他们正在努力研究以便更多地了解火星。

米莉:(3)他们认为火星上的低重力是一个问题吗?

丹尼尔:是的,他们这样认为。

米莉:(4)你知道火星上的交通会是什么样子吗?

丹尼尔:比起地球上的交通可能要好多了。可是,科学家们不能确信在火星上人们是否能够种植植物。

米莉:(5)我想知道多少人想搬到火星上去。(6)我认为人们应当知道火星上的生活与地球上的生活将是不同的。

1. 你知道太阳到火星的距离吗?
2. 科学家们对人类将来住在火星上的可能性意见一致吗?
3. 他们考虑过火星上低重力这一问题吗?
4. 你知道火星上的交通吗?
5. 我想知道想要搬去火星上的人们的数目。
6. 我认为人们应当知道火星上的生活和地球上的生活的不同之处。

C 使用限制性定语从句或简单句

我们可以用有像 with 和 in 这样的介词的简单句来改写一些限制性定语从句。

人们可能居住在有又大又舒服的房间的房子里。

→人们可能居住在有又大又舒服的房间的房子里。

在火星上,你可能看到穿着专用靴子的人。

→在火星上,你可能看到穿着专用靴子的人。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Curious about Mars

C1 **Simon is writing about Mars. Rewrite the defining relative clauses in simple sentences with the preposition with or in.**

1. Mars is a planet that has an environment **similar**[6] to that of the Earth.
2. Astronauts who wear space suits and helmets might stay on Mars for hours.
3. It is difficult to breathe on a planet that has much thinner air than that on the Earth.
4. On Mars there might be people who carry air tanks on their backs.

C2 **Simon is interested in stories about aliens. He even writes to aliens. Replace each of the underlined parts in his letter with another expression.**

Dear aliens,

Humans are thinking about moving to another planet (1) because the pollution on the Earth is very serious. Many people are in no doubt (2) that life on Mars would be very interesting, but I am not sure. We could not play football on Mars (3) because of the low gravity. Life would be boring for me (4) if I could not play football. Maybe this problem could be solved by building indoor playgrounds (5) which have the same football fields as those on the Earth.

By the way, would **strangers**[7] be welcome? I hope to hear from you soon.

Simon

对火星感到好奇

C1 西蒙正在写关于火星的内容。用带有介词 with 或 in 的简单句来改写限制性定语从句。

1. 火星是一个与地球有着相似的环境的行星。
2. 穿着太空服、戴着太空头盔的宇航员们可能在火星呆几个小时。
3. 在一个比地球上大气稀薄得多的行星上呼吸是困难的。
4. 在火星上或许有背后携带氧气罐的人。

C2 西蒙对关于外星人的故事感兴趣。他甚至给外星人写信。用另一种表达来替换他信中每一个画线的部分。

亲爱的外星人：

人类正在考虑搬到另一个行星上去，（1）因为地球的污染非常严重。许多人确信（2）火星上的生活将非常有趣，但我不确定。（3）因为低重力，我们不可以在火星上踢足球。（4）如果我不能踢足球，对于我来说生活将是枯燥的。这个问题或许可以通过建造（5）拥有与地球上相同的足球场的室内运动场来解决。

顺便问一下，陌生人会受欢迎吗？我希望尽快收到你们的来信。

西蒙

II. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

1[高频] **low** /ləʊ/ *adj.* 低的

eg: The price of the book is very **low**.
这本书的价格很低。

【考题在线 1】 At present, the price of the houses in Urumqi _____ than before. I can afford _____ a large one. （乌鲁木齐）

A. are cheaper; to buy　B. is cheaper; buy
C. are lower; buy　D. is lower; to buy

点拨：本题用句意理解法解题。考查形容词比较级和固定搭配。句意：现在，乌鲁木齐市房子的价格比以前_____，我可以担负得起_____一套大房子。价格低用 low，首先排除 A、B 两项；the price of sth. 作主语时谓语动词用单数，又可排除 C 选项。afford to do sth. 负担得起做某事。

拓展 其反义词是 high，意为“高的”。expensive 昂贵的，花钱多的。这个单词若谈到“价格高，货贵”时，其主语不能是价格，必须是货物、物品本身。

eg: I think the price of the dress is **high**.
我认为这件裙子的价格很高。
This watch is **expensive**.
这只表很贵。
These glass-products are not **expensive**.
这些玻璃制品不是很贵。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线 2】The prices of the houses at the moment are still very _____. （武威）

A. high　　B. expensive

C. higher　　D. more expensive

点拨：本题用句意理解法解题。句意：现在房价仍然很高。价格高用 high，低用 low；没有作比较，因此用原级。

【注意】cheap 表示“价廉，便宜的”，其主语也不能是价格，必须是物品本身。

eg：The **cheap** table was bought yesterday.
这张便宜的桌子是昨天买的。
This cloth doll is very **cheap**.
这只布娃娃很便宜。

【考题在线 3】He is very rich but that day he bought _____ bike to save money for the poor children. （呼和浩特）

A. an expensive

B. a more expensive

C. the more cheaper

D. the cheapest

点拨：本题用句意理解法解题。考查形容词辨析及比较等级。句意：他虽然很富有，但是那天他却买了_____自行车，其目的是省钱给那些穷孩子。expensive 昂贵的，cheap 便宜的。既然是为孩子省钱，那么他肯定就会买最便宜的自行车。

2 circle /ˈsɜːkl/ *v.* **围绕，将……圈起来**

eg：Someone had **circled** the next paragraph in red.
有人将下一段用红笔圈起来了。
The plane **circled** the airport before landing.
那架飞机在着陆之前在机场（上空）盘旋。

拓展 circle 还可作名词，意为“圆圈，圈子”。

eg：A square has four sides but a **circle** has no sides. 正方形有四条边，而圆形没有边。

3 [高频] **agreement** /əˈgriːmənt/ *n.* **一致，同意**

eg：We are in **agreement** with their decision.
我们同意他们的决定。
I am in entire **agreement** with you.
我完全同意你。

考向：agree 作动词，意为“同意”。掌握两个用法：agree with sb. 同意某人的意见；agree to do sth. 同意干某事。

eg：He **agreed to** stay.
他同意留下。
I quite **agree with** you.
我完全同意你的意见。

【考题在线 4】根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词：

He told his parents his ideas about the camping several times, and they _____ (同意) with him at last. （连云港）

点拨：本题用句意理解法解题。句意：他数次告诉父母亲关于野营的他的想法，最后他们同意他了。短语 agree with 意为“同意……”；前句是一般过去时，and 引导的并列句也须用一般过去时。

4 that /ðæt/ *pron.* **那**

考向一：that 往往可以代替前面提到的单数名词或不可数名词，以避免重复，但是这一名词在第二次出现时必须有后置定语。

eg：The population of China is larger than **that** of America. (that = the population)
中国的人口比美国的人口多。
The weather of Beijing is as good as **that** of Tianjin. (that = the weather)
北京的天气和天津一样好。

考向二：those 用来指代“同名异物”的可数名词复数。

eg：The houses of the rich are generally larger than **those** of the poor. (those = the houses)
大体上，富人的房子要比穷人的房子大。
The bikes made in China are as good as **those** made in the USA. (those = the bikes)
中国产的自行车与美国产的一样好。

【考题在线 5】Your home town is really nice! The air quality is as good as _____ of Sanya. （常州）

A. it　　B. one

C. that　　D. the one

点拨：考查代词的用法。句意：你的故乡真的很漂亮！空气质量跟三亚的_____一样好。it 它，常用于代指物；one 一个，常用来代指一类事物中的一个；that 用作代词，代替前面出现的人或物，复数形式为 those；the one 那个，特指。此处是将家乡的空气质量跟三亚的（空气质量）进行比较，因此使用 that。

5 possibility /ˌpɒsəˈbɪləti/ *n.* **可能性**

eg：She thought of several **possibilities**.
她考虑了几种可能的情况。

基础

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

We must accept the **possibility** that we might be wrong.
我们必须承认这种可能性，我们有可能搞错了。

拓展 possible 作形容词，意为“可能的”，其反义词是 impossible，意为“不可能的”。

eg：You'd better rest as much as **possible**.
你最好尽可能多休息。
Nothing is **impossible**.
没有什么是不可能的。

【考题在线 6】用所给词的适当形式填空：
It is _____ (possible) for me to do too many things in two days. Can you help me? (贵阳)

点拨：本题用**句意理解法**解题。句意：对我来说，两天之内做太多的事是_____。你能帮我吗？根据第二句句意：可知此处应该用“不可能”。

6 similar /ˈsɪmɪlə/ *adj.* 类似的

eg：We have **similar** opinions.
我们有相同的看法。

考向：similar 后跟介词 to 表示“与……相像”；跟 in 表示“在……方面相像”。

eg：Gold is **similar in** color to brass.
金和黄铜颜色相仿。
My proposal is **similar to** his.
我的建议与他的相似。

注意 same 与 similar 意义相近，但并不相同。前者指“完全相同”，后者指“类似，差不多”。

【考题在线 7】根据句意及汉语提示，拼写单词：
We have _____ (相似的) hobbies and interests. (宁夏)

7 stranger /ˈstreɪndʒə(r)/ *n.* 外来者，陌生人

eg：No one knows the man. He must be a **stranger**.
没有人认识这个男人。他一定是陌生人。
There are a lot of **strangers** in this city.
这个城市有大量的外来者。

拓展 其形容词形式是 strange，意为“陌生的，奇怪的”。

eg：It seemed **strange** that she left so early.
奇怪的是她走得这么早。
He had a **strange** expression on his face.
他脸上呈现出奇怪的表情。

【考题在线 8】There's a _____ (奇怪的) smell in the house. Do you know what it is?

点拨：句意：房子里有一股奇怪的气味。你知道是什么吗？表示“奇怪的”用 strange。

考题在线答案
1. D　2. A　3. D　4. agreed
5. C　6. impossible
7. similar　8. strange

Ⅲ. 语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

简单句和复合句之间的转换（二）

考点 1：状语从句和简单句之间的转换

我们可以用介词短语把状语从句转换为简单句。

1. because 引导的原因状语从句用短语 because of 可转换成简单句。
He was late for school **because** the traffic was too heavy on the road.
→He was late for school **because of** the heavy traffic on the road. 他上学迟到了，因为路上交通太拥挤。

2. if not/no 引导的条件状语从句可借助带有 without 的短语转化为简单句。
People can't live **if** there is **no** food, water or oxygen.
→People can't live **without** food, water or oxygen.
没有食物、水和氧气，人们不能生存。

3. 时间状语从句可借助介词短语转化为简单句。
I could swim **when I was five years old**.
→I could swim **at the age of five**.
我 5 岁时就会游泳。

4. so that 引导的目的状语从句可用“in order to”或“so as to”转换为简单句。
He exercises every day **so that** he can keep fit.
→He exercises every day **in order to** keep fit.
为了保持健康，他每天锻炼。

5. so … that … 引导的结果状语从句可用“… enough to do”结构变成简单句。
This hall is **so** large **that** it can hold 2,000 people.
→This hall is large **enough to** hold 2,000 people.
这个大厅如此大，能装 2000 人。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【考题在线1】把复合句改为简单句：
My father went home after he finished his work.
→My father went home _____ _____ his work.
点拨：考查将复合句改为简单句。句意：我父亲完成工作后回家了。本题考查把含有after引导的时间状语从句简化为含有“after+*v.*-ing”的句子。

考点2：宾语从句和简单句之间的转换
我们可以用介词把宾语从句转换为简单句。
What he said reminds me that he helped me with my English in the past.
→What he said reminds me of his help with my English in the past. 他说的话使我想起了他过去在英语(学习)上对我的帮助。
【注意】常用的一些动词和介词的搭配有：
(1) remind sb. of.... 使某人想起……
(2) be sure/certain about ... 对……确信

【考题在线2】将复合句改为简单句：
I am sure that the concert tickets will be expensive.
I am sure _____ the high price of the concert tickets.
点拨：考查将复合句改为简单句。句意：我确信音乐会的票将会很贵。本题考查把含有be sure that的宾语从句简化为含有“be sure about sth.”的简单句。

考点3：定语从句和简单句之间的转换
我们可以用介词把定语从句转换为简单句。
The teacher who is wearing a dress is my new English teacher.
→The teacher in a dress is my new English teacher. 那个穿裙子的老师是我的新英语老师。

【考题在线3】The girl who is in a hat is Lucy King.（改成同义句）
The girl _____ _____ _____ is Lucy King.
点拨：考查将复合句改为简单句。句意为：戴帽子的那个女孩是露西·金。who引导的定语从句可以转化为含介词的简单句。

考题在线答案
1. after finishing 2. about 3. in a hat

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见153页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示补全单词
1. I'm s_____ you will win the game.
2. This photo r_____ me of my old friends. I miss them very much.
3. I have never been to America. I'm a complete s_____ to American life.
4. We are in a_____ with their decision.
5. I don't think the price of the computer is l_____.
6. Is there any p_____ that you'll be back by the weekend?
7. The d_____ between you and me wouldn't be a problem.
8. The dancers were standing in a c_____ around the fire.
9. The man's l_____ family background couldn't hinder his success.
10. I have pity on you; I've had a s_____ unhappy experience myself.

二、单项选择
11. Life on Mars will be better than _____ on Earth _____ many ways.
【导学号：28374017】
A. the one; on B. that; on
C. that; in D. the one; in

12. Are you sure _____?
A. how far is Mars away from the sun
B. what is the transport like on Mars
C. of the distance from the sun to Mars
D. the life on Mars will be different from on the Earth

13. —I think we should ask people to use public transport more often.
—_____. (沈阳)
A. Never mind B. Not at all
C. Sorry D. I agree

14. The best gift in the world may be not expensive, but must be full of love. (六盘水)
A. clean B. cheap
C. bad D. smart

15. —Can you tell the difference between these two pictures?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

—Difference? Oh, no. They look quite _____. （荆州）

A. similar　　B. different
C. strange　　D. interesting

三、语法专练

16. The boy can't come to school because he is ill.
The boy can't come to school _____.

17. The photos remind me that I travelled to the UK five years ago.
The photos remind me _____ my trip to the UK five years ago.

18. Here comes a tall man who has a book under his arm.
Here comes a tall man _____.

19. On Mars you might see people who wear special boots.
On Mars you might see people _____.

20. I can't work out the maths problem if you don't help me.
I can't work out the maths problem _____.

21. If I don't have a rest, I can't walk further.
I can't walk further _____.

22. He could not go to the party because he had much homework to do.
He could not go to the party _____ _____.

23. Are you certain that Tom is worrying about the easy exam?
Are you certain _____?

24. We prefer to stay in a hotel room which has a sea view.
We prefer to stay in a hotel room _____.

25. The man who wears a black jacket is my uncle.
The man _____ is my uncle.

Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

I. 课文原文及译文

Integrated skills

A Living on Mars

A1 Daniel wants to live on Mars in the future. However, Sandy is still not sure if she would like to. This week, there is a TV programme on this topic. Listen to the preview. Help Sandy make notes of it.

课文听力A1音频及材料

Survey carried out[1] in: (1) Schools in Sunshine Town
Day: (2) _____
Channel: (3) _____
Name of programme: (4) _____
Time: (5) _____
Percentage of students who would like to move away from the Earth: (6) _____

A2 Sandy is watching the TV programme. She wants to write down the important points. Listen to the discussion and help her complete her lists.

课文听力A2音频及材料

Advantages
1. It would be very interesting.
2. We could study at _____.
3. It is not so crowded, with much more _____.
4. Travelling in space would be _____.

综合技能

A 住在火星上

A1 丹尼尔想将来住在火星上。然而桑迪仍不能确定自己是否想住在火星上。本周有一个关于这个话题的电视节目。听听预告片。帮助桑迪做好记录。

调查开展地点：(1)阳光镇上的学校
日期：(2)_____
频道：(3)_____
节目名称：(4)_____
时间：(5)_____
想搬离地球的学生的百分率：(6)_____

A2 桑迪正在看电视节目。她想写下重要的观点。听讨论并帮助她完成所列的内容。

优点：
1. 它将非常有趣。
2. 我们能在网上学校学习。
3. 不是那么拥挤，有更多的空间。
4. 在太空旅行会是有趣的。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Disadvantages

1. We do not know if it is __really safe__.
2. We might _____ from living there.
3. It is _____ from the Earth.
4. There is not enough food, _____ or oxygen.
5. There might be _____ aliens.

A3 Daniel and Sandy are talking about the TV programme. Complete their conversation with the information in Parts A1 and A2.

Sandy: Did you watch the programme called (1) _____ on (2) _____ TV last (3) _____ evening.

Daniel: Yes, I did. But I **missed**[2] the first part of it. When did the programme begin?

Sandy: It began at (4)_____. It started with a discussion about a (5)_____. It showed that (6)_____ of the students would like to (7) _____ the Earth and live on (8)_____.

Daniel: Oh yes. Some students said living on another planet such as Mars would be very (9) _____. They could study at (10) _____, and travelling in (11) _____ would be fun.

Sandy: There might also be much more (12)_____ for everyone on Mars. It's too crowded here.

Daniel: However, some other students were worried about living there. They said they didn't know if it would be (13)_____. They thought they might (14) _____ because there's not enough food, (15) _____ or oxygen on Mars.

Sandy: They were even afraid of aliens there. They thought aliens were (16) _____ and would **harm**[3] people.

B Speak up: Earth or Mars?

Daniel and Sandy are talking about living on Mars. Work in pairs and discuss whether you would like to live on Mars. Use the conversation below as a model.

课文朗读B

Daniel: Would you like to live on Mars, Sandy?

Sandy: I'm not sure if it's worth the **risk**[4]. It worries me.

Daniel: Why? It would be quite safe. **After all**[5], humans have already been to the Moon.

缺点:

1. 我们不知道是否真的安全。
2. 我们可能因住在那儿而生病。
3. 它离地球很遥远。
4. 没有足够的食物、水或氧气。
5. 可能会有危险的外星人。

A3 丹尼尔和桑迪正在谈论这个电视节目。用 A1 和 A2 部分中的信息完成他们的对话。

桑迪: 上周五晚上你看了在阳光电视台播放的《搬到火星》节目吗?

丹尼尔: 是的，我看了。 但我错过了第一部分。 节目是什么时候开始的?

桑迪: 在晚上七点半开始。 节目以讨论一个调查开始。 调查显示百分之五十的学生想搬离地球到另一个星球去生活。

丹尼尔: 哦，是的。 一些学生说生活在另一个行星，例如火星，会是非常有趣的。 他们能在网上学校学习，而且在太空旅行将会是有趣的。

桑迪: 在火星上，可能每个人会有更多的空间。 这里太拥挤了。

丹尼尔: 然而，关于住在那儿，其他一些学生很担心住在那儿。 他们说他们不知道住在火星上是否真的安全。 他们认为他们可能会因为火星上没有足够的食物、水或氧气而生病。

桑迪: 他们甚至害怕那里的外星人。 他们认为外星人是危险的并且会伤害人们。

B 大声说: 地球还是火星?

丹尼尔和桑迪正在谈论生活在火星上的事。 结对练习，并谈论你是否想生活在火星上。 用下面的对话作为示例。

丹尼尔: 桑迪，你愿意住在火星上吗?

桑迪: 我不能确定是否值得冒险。 它使我很担心。

丹尼尔: 为什么? 会相当安全的。 毕竟人类已经去过月球了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Sandy: Maybe you're right, but we might get ill from living there.

Daniel: I don't think so, Sandy. It's just a different kind of life. It would be great to live on another planet.

Sandy: What about all your friends here on the Earth if you go to Mars?

Daniel: I want you all to come too.

Sandy: OK. If we all go together, it should be fun.

Study skills

Self-assessment

To do self-assessment means to think about your studies in order to find out your strengths and weaknesses. This can help you make a plan to improve the way you study.

A Kitty is completing a self-assessment form to find out how she is doing with her English study. Read her results in the table below.

	always	often	sometimes	almost never
Do you speak English in class?		√		
Can you remember new words easily?				√
Do you make spelling mistakes?		√		
Can you learn new grammar rules well?				√
Can you answer listening questions correctly?			√	
Do you get good results in tests?			√	

B After doing the self-assessment, Kitty is making a plan for studying English. Read her plan. Do you think she has some good ideas?

I often speak English well in class, but I still need to practise more.

桑迪：或许你是对的，但我们住在那儿可能会生病的。

丹尼尔：我不这样认为，桑迪。它仅仅是一种不同的生活。生活在另一个行星上会很棒。

桑迪：如果你去火星，你在地球上的朋友怎么办呢？

丹尼尔：我想让你们也都来。

桑迪：行。如果我们一起去，那应该会很有趣。

学习技能

自我评价

做自我评价是指思考你的学习以找出你的优缺点。这能帮助你制定出一个计划来改善你的学习方法。

A 基蒂正在完成一个自我评价表来查明她在英语学习方面进展如何。阅读下面表格中她的结果。

	总是	常常	有时	几乎从不
你在课堂上讲英语吗？		√		
你能容易地记住生词吗？				√
你犯拼写错误吗？		√		
你能学好新的语法规则吗？				√
你能正确地回答听力问题吗？			√	
你在考试中得到好的分数吗？			√	

B 在做自我评价后，基蒂正在制定一个学习英语的计划。阅读她的计划。你认为她有一些好的主意吗？

我在课堂上常把英语说得很好，但我仍然需要做更多的练习。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

I need to work harder to learn new words and grammar rules. I plan to copy the new words in my notebook and read them every morning. I plan to remember five new words every day. Grammar rules are difficult, so I will keep an English diary and try to use the new grammar rules I have learnt. I plan to watch English TV programmes every weekend in order to improve my listening skills.

C **Now complete the self-assessment form in Part A yourself. Then write your own plan for studying English.**

我需要更努力地学习生词和语法规则。我计划把生词抄在我的笔记本中，并且每天早上阅读它们。我计划每天记五个生词。语法规则是难的，因此我将写英语日记，并且尽量使用我已经学到的新的语法规则。我计划每周末看英文电视节目来提高我的听力技巧。

C 现在你自己完成 A 部分中自我评价表。然后写你自己学习英语的计划。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

❶[高频] carried out 被开展，被执行

考向一：此处的 carried out 是过去分词短语作后置定语。

eg: This is a new book **written** by Mo Yan.
这是一本莫言写的新书。
The Great Wall **built** over 2,000 years ago is still solid.
两千多年前建的万里长城仍然很坚固。

【考题在线 1】 At least 300 million people are using QQ _____ by Ma Huateng to chat online. （汕尾）
A. create B. creat
C. created D. creating
点拨：考查非谓语动词。句意：至少 3 亿人正在使用由马化腾创建的 QQ 在网上聊天。QQ 与建立之间是被动关系，故用过去分词作后置定语。

考向二：(1)常见的含 carry 的短语：
carry out 开展，执行；carry on 继续进行；carry on with sth. 继续……；carry over（使）继续下去；carry away 带走，冲走，搬走。
(2)常见的含 out 的短语：
break out 爆发；come out of 从……出来；come out 出来，出版；get out 出去，取出；give out 分发，发出；go out 出去；hand out 分发；hang out 闲逛；help out 帮助克服困难；keep out 不让……进入；look out of 从……向外看；look out 小心，向外看；out of style 过时的；put out 熄灭；run out of 用光；rush out 冲出去；stressed out 紧张的，有压力的；take out 拿出，取出；work out 算出，找到。

【考题在线 2】 —The fire _____ at around 3 a. m. local time when people were celebrating with fireworks.
—I'm sorry to hear it.
A. broke out B. ran out
C. went out D. put out
点拨：本题用辨析法解题。考查动词短语辨析。句意：——火灾_____在当地时间凌晨 3 点左右，当时人们正在放烟花庆贺。——听到这个我很难过。break out 爆发，突发；run out 跑出，用尽；go out 出去；put out 熄灭。根据后半句意思可知，“火灾突发在……”。

【考题在线 3】 —These problems are too hard to _____. Will you give me some advice?
—There are many ways. The most important is to have a careful plan. （孝感）
A. hand out B. work out
C. look out D. break out
点拨：本题用辨析法解题。考查动词短语辨析。句意：——这些问题太难了不能_____。你能给我一些建议吗？——有很多方法。最重要的是要有一个认真的计划。hand out “分发”；work out“计算出，解决”；look out “当心，向外看”；break out “爆发”。根据语境可知，用 work out，表示“解决”的意思。

❷miss /mɪs/ *v.* 错过
eg: I don't want to **miss** the early bus.
我不想错过早班车。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【注意】miss后接动词名词，不接动词不定式。

eg：We **missed** visiting the town.
我们错过了参观那个镇。

【考题在线4】Get up right now, or you'll _____ (fail to catch) the first bus. （乐山）

点拨：本题用句意理解法解题。句意：现在就起床，否则你会错过首班公交车。fail to catch是"错过"之意，故应填miss。

考向一：miss作动词，还有"丢失，想念"的意思。形容词missing表示be absent。

eg：The little girl is **missing**.
那个小女孩失踪了。
Do you often **miss** your parents?
你经常想念你的父母亲吗？
（自贡中考）I have been away from my hometown for a long time. I really **miss** it.
我离开家乡很长一段时间了。我真的想念家乡。

考向二：miss还可作名词，意为"小姐（需大写首字母）；失误"。

eg：**Miss** Wang is our English teacher.
王小姐是我们的英语老师。
We all know that a **miss** is as good as a mile.
我们都知道：错误再小也是错。

❸[高频]**harm**/hɑːm/ *v.* 伤害

eg：There was a traffic accident in this street, but no one was **harmed**.
这条街上发生了交通事故，但没有人受伤。
We little believed that he would **harm** us.
我们一点也不相信他会伤害我们。

【考题在线5】Reading on mobile phones does _____ (伤害) to your eyes.

点拨：句意：在手机上阅读对你的眼睛有害。考查短语do harm to sth."对……有害"。

考向一：do harm to sb.
该结构表示"对某人有害"，其中的harm为不可数名词。

eg：Smoking **does harm to** your health.
吸烟对你的健康有害。
Such books **do** great **harm to** young people. = Such books **do** young people great **harm**.
那样的书对年轻人危害很大。

考向二：其形容词形式是harmful，意为"有害的"，harmless意为"无害的"。其中do harm to sb.相当于be harmful to sb.，意为"对某人有害"。

eg：This book **is harmful to** us.
这本书对我们有害。
That book **is harmless to** us.
那本书对我们无害。

【考题在线6】用所给词的适当形式填空：Smoking is _____ (harm). （兰州）

点拨：句意：吸烟是有害的。be harmful意为"是有害的"。

❹**risk**/rɪsk/ *n.* 风险，危险

eg：He saved my life at the **risk** of his own.
他冒着生命危险救了我的命。

考向：take a risk/ risks 冒危险，冒风险
run the risk of sth./doing sth. 冒……的危险；冒险做某事。

eg：You have no right to **take risks** with other people's lives.
你没有权利拿别人的生命去冒险。
We can't **run the risk** of losing all money.
我们不能冒失掉全部钱的风险。

培养"挑战自我"素养

勇于挑战自我，培养勇敢精神。

人的一生中，要经历许多挑战。只有在挑战中不断磨炼意志，才能体现自我人生价值（personal value）。面对挑战时我们应找准目标（goal），有的放矢全身心投入（devote），还要充实自我（enrich oneself），这样不仅可以提高个人魅力，还能让你在生活中自立自强（independent）在工作中崭露头角。

【素养行动】当同学们在面对挑战时，应该坚持不懈，具有坚强的意志（the strong will），战胜困难的决心（the resolution of overcoming difficulties），直至成功。

【素养行动结果】学会应对挑战，并磨炼意志品质。

拓展 risk用作及物动词，接名词、代词、动名词（不接动词不定式）作宾语。可用于被动结构。

eg：We can't **risk** our health.
我们不能使自己的健康受到威胁。
They **risked** losing their jobs.
他们冒着失去工作的危险。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

⑤after all 毕竟

eg: The old methods were proved best **after all**.
老方法终究被证明是最好的。
Don't blame him for breaking that vase; **after all** he is a child.
别责怪他打碎那个花瓶，他毕竟是小孩子嘛。

考向：[辨析] after all, above all, first of all 与 in all:

after all	意为"毕竟；终究；到底"，表示让步。
above all	意为"最重要的是；尤其是"，强调要引起特别注意。
first of all	意为"首先"，强调次序。
in all	意为"总共；总计"。

eg: He is certain to come. **After all**, he's already accepted the invitation.
他肯定来。他毕竟已接受了邀请。
We must work, and **above all** we must believe in ourselves. 我们必须工作，尤其重要的是我们必须相信我们自己。
First of all, let me introduce myself to you.
首先，让我向你作个自我介绍。
There are thirty **in all** in the party who will travel to Lanzhou.
赴兰州的旅游团总共有30人。

【考题在线7】—The ship sinking of Korea teaches us to care for ourselves and the people around us.
—So it is. _____ life is the most important to everyone. (山西)
A. For example B. At last
C. After all

点拨：本题用辨析法解题。考查介词短语。For example 意为"例如"；At last 意为"最后"；After all 意为"毕竟"。句意：——韩国的沉船事故教育我们要关爱我们自己以及我们周围的人们。——确实是的。毕竟，生命对每个人来说是最重要的。"表示"毕竟"用 after all。

考题在线答案
1. C 2. A 3. B
4. miss 5. harm
6. harmful 7. C

Ⅲ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 ☞(答案见153页)

一、单项选择

1. —Your father never shops online. Why's that?
—He says they're much _____ but the products are not really good. (黄冈)
A. nicer B. cheap
C. nice D. cheaper

2. "Right" and "write" sound the same, _____ they do not mean the same thing. (扬州)
A. but B. if
C. so D. or

3. This is one of the most interesting cities _____ I have ever visited. (兰州)
A. who B. that
C. which D. where

4. —What about going to Shanghai Disneyland Park next month, Harry?
—_____! We'll have a lot of fun there. (连云港)
A. Good luck B. Never mind
C. Sounds great D. Certainly not

5. Our geography teacher told us to _____ more information about our city and share it next week. (安徽)【导学号：28374018】
A. find out B. keep away
C. turn off D. use up

二、完成下列句子

6. 我不想冒遇见约翰的危险。
I don't want to run _____ John.

7. 众所周知，吸烟对你的健康有害。
As we know, smoking _____ your health.

8. 不要责备他，他毕竟是个新手。
Don't blame him, _____ he is a green hand.

9. 昨天她差点没打着他。
She narrowly _____ hitting him yesterday.

10. 一些年轻人没有足够的钱开展他们的设计。
Some young people don't have enough money to _____ their designs.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

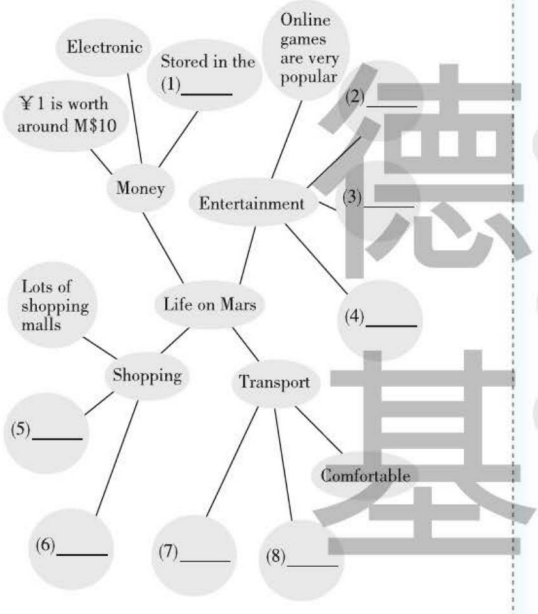
Ⅰ. 课文原文及译文

Task

A guide to living on Mars

A Daniel is making a guide to living on Mars in the future. First, help him complete the spidergram below to organize his ideas. Write the correct letters in the blanks.

a. Cars float in the air
b. Low-gravity basketball games
c. Traffic with no air pollution
d. Space clothes and food
e. Many online theatres
f. Planet Mars Bank
g. Goods from the Earth are hard to find
h. Visit the two moons



B Daniel is writing his draft. Help him complete it. Use the information on page 62 to help you.

Here is a guide to living on Mars in the future.

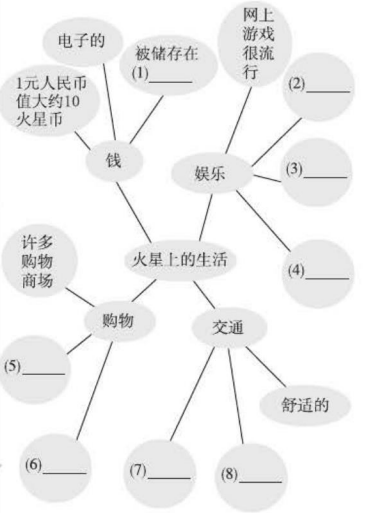
On Mars, we use Mars dollars. We get about M $ 10 for every ¥1, but we never see any of it! Mars dollars are electronic and are stored in the (1)_____.

任务

火星生活指南

A 丹尼尔正在制作一个未来在火星上生活的指南。首先，帮助他完成下面的蜘蛛状表格来组织他的想法。在空白处写上正确的字母。

a. 飘浮在空中的汽车
b. 低重力篮球比赛
c. 没有空气污染的交通
d. 太空服和食物
e. 许多网上剧院
f. 火星银行
g. 来自地球上的商品很难找到
h. 参观两颗卫星



B 丹尼尔正在写草稿。帮助他完成他的草稿。用62页中的信息来帮助你。

这是将来生活在火星上的指南。

在火星上，我们用火星币。1元人民币我们兑换约10火星币，但我们从未见过这些钱！火星币是电子的并被储存在火星银行。

荣德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A very popular form of entertainment is online games. They make us **feel like**[1] we are really inside the games! There are also many (2)_____ theatres. There are (3)_____ to visit, but most people may **prefer**[2] to watch the amazing low-gravity (4)_____ **instead**[3].

There are lots of (5)_____ on Mars. They sell (6)_____ and food. Most things are cheap on Mars. Goods from the Earth are (7)_____.

The public transport system is (8)_____, and it produces (9)_____. If you want to drive, you can buy a car which (10)_____!

Life on Mars is interesting, isn't it?

C **You also want to write a guide to living on Mars. First, make a spidergram like Daniel's on page 62. Then write the guide and include some drawings.**

Self-assessment

I have learnt	Details	Result
1. about life on Mars.		
2. to use the new words to talk about life on Mars.		
3. to use adverbial clauses, object clauses, defining relative clauses or simple sentences.		
4. how to do a self-assessment.		

Result: Perfect! Good! Not bad!

I need to spend more time on _____.

一种非常流行的娱乐形式是网络游戏。它们使我们感觉我们真的置身于游戏之中！也有许多在线剧院。有两颗卫星可供参观，但大多数人更喜欢看令人惊叹的低重力篮球比赛。

在火星上有许多购物商场。它们出售太空服和食物。火星上大多数的东西是便宜的。来自地球上的商品很难找到。

公共交通系统很舒服并且不会产生空气污染。如果你想开车，你可以买一辆飘浮在空中的车子！

火星上的生活是有趣的，不是吗？

C 你也想写一篇生活在火星上的指南。首先做一个像62页上丹尼尔的那样的蜘蛛状表格。然后写出指南并添加一些图片。

自我评价

我已学会/了解	细节	结果
1. 关于火星上的生活。		
2. 用生词谈论火星上的生活。		
3. 使用状语从句、宾语从句、定语从句或简单句。		
4. 怎样做一个自我评价。		

结果：棒极了！好！不错！

我需要花更多的时间在_____。

Ⅱ. 重点知识详解 稳拿中考基础20分

[1] feel like 想要

考向一：feel like + 从句，意为"觉得好像是……"。

eg: He **feels like** that he has never been to such a place.

他感觉好像从未到过这样一个地方。

考向二：feel like + 名词/代词，意为"想要……"。

eg: I **feel like** a rest after the long journey.

长途旅行后我想休息一下。

考向三：feel like + doing，意为"想做……"。

eg: We all **feel like** celebrating.

我们都想庆祝一番。

【考题在线1】I have a bad cold. I don't feel like _____ anything. (泉州)

A. to eat B. eating

C. eat

点拨：本题用**固定搭配法**解题。句意：我患了严重感冒。我不想吃东西。feel like doing sth. 意为"想做某事"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

【考题在线2】When summer comes, a lot of people feel like _____ to have fun.（黄石）

A. to swim　　B. swim

C. swimming　　D. have swum

点拨：本题用固定搭配法解题。feel like doing sth. 为固定搭配，意为“想要做某事”。

❷[高频] **prefer** /prɪˈfɜː(r)/ *v.* 较喜欢


知识微课：prefer

eg：（南充中考）Alice **prefers** stories that are short and funny.
爱丽丝更喜欢短而有趣的故事。

考向一：[重点]用作动词，表示“更喜欢”“宁愿”等，后接动词时，可用不定式或动名词形式，其区别大致为：表示一般情况用动名词，表示特定动作用不定式。

eg：I **prefer walking** alone.
我喜欢一个人溜达。
—Can I give you a lift?
我可以捎你一程吗？
—No, thanks. I **prefer to** walk.
不用了，谢谢。我更喜欢步行。

考向二：用于 prefer …to …时，主要连接两个名词（短语）或动名词。

eg：I **prefer** the seaside to the mountain.
我喜欢海边胜过山区。
Tom **prefers** reading to talking.
汤姆喜欢读书胜过聊天。

【考题在线3】根据首字母的提示填补单词，使句子完整、通顺。
Some of the children p_____ cartoons to documentaries.（新疆）

点拨：本题用题眼法解题。句意：比起纪录片，一些孩子们更喜欢动画片。prefer …to …“比起……，更喜欢……”，因句子的主语 Some of the children 表示复数，此处应该用动词原形。

【考题在线4】Mike _____ reading _____ playing computer games.（眉山）

A. prefers; than　　B. prefers; to

C. would rather; than　　D. would rather; to

点拨：本题用固定搭配法解题。句意：比起玩电脑游戏，迈克更喜欢读书。prefer …to …“比起……，更喜欢……”，与动词连用时用动词-ing 形式；would rather … than …“宁愿……而不愿……”，与动词连用时用不带 to 的不定式。

考向三：[重点]用于 prefer …rather than …时，主要用于连接两个不定式（后面的不定式通常省略 to，但前面的不定式必须带 to）。

eg：He **prefers to** read **rather than** watch television. 他宁愿读书而不愿看电视。
She **preferred to** stay at home **rather than** go out. 她宁愿呆在家里，也不愿出门。

【考题在线5】The old man prefers to _____ at home rather than _____ to have a picnic.（绥化）

A. staying; going

B. stay; going

C. stay; go

点拨：本题用固定搭配法解题。动词 prefer 意思是“更喜欢”，固定用法“prefer + doing + to + doing”意思是“比起后者更喜欢前者”；或“prefer + to + do + rather than + do”，意思是“宁愿做某事而不愿做某事”，句意：这个老人宁愿呆在家，也不愿意去野餐。

考向四：【注意】prefer 的第三人称单数是 prefers，过去式是 preferred。

eg：The boy **preferred** football to basketball last year.
去年这个男孩喜欢足球胜过篮球。

【考题在线6】She _____（喜欢）classical music to pop music.

点拨：动词 prefer 意思是“更喜欢”，常用固定用法“prefer + A. + to + B.”意思是“比起 B 更喜欢 A”；句意：比起流行音乐，她更喜欢古典音乐。因句子的主语是第三人称单数，故此处应该用单三形式。

❸[高频] **instead** /ɪnˈsted/ *adv.* 代替，反而

eg：We shouldn't look down upon them, **instead** we should try to help them and take more care of them. 我们不仅不该歧视他们，反而更应该多帮助、照顾他们。

考向一：[辨析] instead 与 instead of：

instead	意为“代替，然而”，作副词用，通常位于句尾。如位于句首时常用逗号与后面隔开。instead 在顺承句子中作“代替”讲，而在转折（或逆转）句子中作“然而”讲。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

instead of	其意与 instead 相同，不同之处在于它后面常接宾语，其宾语多由名词、代词、动词-ing 形式充当。

eg:（无锡中考）Neither of them is crazy about computer games. **Instead**, they like reading.
他们俩都不沉迷于电脑游戏。相反他们喜欢读书。
We'll ask Li Mei **instead of** Mary.
我们将去问李梅而不问玛丽。
I'll go **instead of** her. 我会替她去。

【考题在线 7】Mr. Black doesn't like traveling. He stayed at home _____（而不是）going out all the summer.
点拨:短语 instead of 意为"而不是;代替"。

考向二:【注意】当 instead 用在祈使句中，只能位于句末。
eg: Lily isn't here. Ask Lucy **instead**.
Lily 不在这儿。去问 Lucy 吧。

考向三: instead 与 instead of 的句型可相互转换。
eg: He didn't answer me. **Instead**, he asked me another question. → He asked me another question **instead of** answering me.
他没有回答我。相反的，他问了我另一个问题。
I'll go **instead of** her. → She won't go. I'll go **instead**. 我将代替她去。

考题在线答案
1. B 2. C 3. prefer 4. B 5. C
6. prefers 7. instead of

Ⅲ. 写作书案 夺取中考写作20分

写作方法:"优劣对比法"写"火星生活的利与弊"

火星生活的利与弊	火星生活的利
	火星生活的弊

易错点提示
注意正确表达火星的相关知识以及你自己的观点。

参考词汇和句式

单词与短语	interesting alien get ill float away	oxygen online schools far from
句式	1. I think living on Mars ... 2. It's really ... to live on .... 3. But there are also some ... 4. We will not be used to ...	

典例
目前，地球正面临着前所未有的危机，人口增多，能源减少，到太空生活成了热门话题。Daniel 和他的同学讨论了在火星上生活的利弊，假如你是 Daniel，根据讨论结果写一篇 100 词左右的报道，开头已给出，不计入总词数。

火星生活的优势	火星生活的劣势
上在线学校 更多的空间 为我们工作的机器人 东西很便宜	生活在那儿易生病 离地球远 没有食品、水和氧气 一些危险的外星人 很容易飘浮

Life on Mars

Life on Mars is different from that on Earth. Some students think it is better to live on Mars than on Earth.

【范文欣赏】

Life on Mars

Life on Mars is different from that on Earth. Some students think it is better to live on Mars than on Earth. Here are some advantages. First, we can go to online schools instead of real ones. Second, we can also have more space. Third, we have robots at home and they do housework for us. What's more, things on Mars are cheap.

But there are also some disadvantages. It's very far from the Earth and there is no food, water or oxygen on Mars. We will not be used to living there, so it may be easy for us to get ill. Even worse, we will meet some dangerous aliens and it's easy to float

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

away on Mars.

What do you think of living on Mars?

【点评】

本文运用了“优劣对比法”写“火星生活的利与弊”。1. 火星生活的优点（上在线学校；更多的空间；为我们工作的机器人；东西很便宜）；2. 火星生活的缺点（离地球远；没有食品、水和氧气；生活在那儿易生病；一些危险的外星人；很容易飘浮）。

添彩点：1. first、second 等的运用使文章有条理性，层次分明。

2. instead of, far from, be used to, even worse 的使用为文章增色不少。

“写作针对性训练”见单元过关测试书面表达

Ⅳ. 随堂练习 稳拿中考基础20分 （答案见154页）

一、单项选择

1. A quiet boy like Daniel would like to stay at home doing nothing _____ going out.
A. because of
B. instead of
C. such as
D. together with

2. —What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?
—_____ is OK, but I prefer coffee _____ milk. （鄂州）【导学号：28374019】
A. Either; to
B. Either; with
C. Neither; to
D. Neither; with

3. My father _____ when he was in his twenties.
A. would rather play basketball than to sing
B. would rather play basketball to singing
C. prefers basketball to football
D. preferred playing basketball to singing

4. Boys _____ model planes to dolls, while girls _____ have dolls than have model planes.
A. would rather; prefer
B. prefer; would rather
C. would rather; would rather
D. prefer; prefer

5. —What did Max just say to you?
—He asked me _____. （连云港）
A. if I would like to go skating
B. when did I buy this CD
C. where I will spend the weekend
D. that I had a good time

6. We have to finish the work now, _____? （呼和浩特）
A. don't we
B. haven't we
C. have we
D. do we

7. —Aunt Li, who is the pretty girl in red in the picture?
—It's my daughter. The picture _____ 10 years ago. （淮安）
A. took
B. is taken
C. has taken
D. was taken

8. —Have you read the book *Jane Eyre*?
—Yes. It's a famous book and really worth _____. （南京）
A. to read
B. reading
C. to be read
D. read

9. The show was so funny that it made everyone _____ again and again. （济宁）
A. laugh
B. laughed
C. laughing
D. to laugh

10. We all like Lucy as she is always thinking _____ of others than herself. （泰安）
A. less
B. much more
C. much
D. better

二、重点知识浓缩

Moving to Mars

Our own planet, the Earth, is becoming more and more crowded and _____[11]. Hopefully, we can build a better world on _____[12] by the year 2100.

At present, our spacecraft are too slow to carry large numbers of _____[13] to Mars. By 2100, the _____[14] might take only 20 minutes in spacecraft that travel at the _____[15] of light.

Food on Mars would probably be in the _____[16] of pills and would not be so _____[17] as that on the Earth.

Gravity could be _____[18] problem for people on Mars. The gravity on Mars is only about _____[19] of that on the Earth. People on Mars would have to wear _____[20] boots to prevent themselves from floating off into space.

基德英语

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Project 2

课文原文及译文

A booklet about life in the future

What kind of world would you like to live in? Make a booklet about your life in the future.

A Planning and preparing

1. Work in pairs. Talk about where you would like to live. You could live:
- on the Earth
- on Mars
- on the Moon
- in space
- somewhere else

2. Write a heading called "Things I would need". Under the heading, list the five most important things you would like to have in your future world.

3. You have a robot in your future world. What kind of robot do you want? You can choose one of these:
- a home robot
- a schoolwork robot
- a hobby robot
- a sports robot
- a teacher robot

What would your robot be able to do? What characteristics should your robot have? Write down your answers.

4. Think of at least three advantages and three disadvantages of living in your future world. Then fill in the table below.

Advantages	Disadvantages
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5

关于未来生活的小册子

你想住在哪种世界中？制作一本关于你的未来生活的小册子。

A 计划与准备

1. 结对练习。谈论你想住在哪里。你可以住：
- 在地球上
- 在火星上
- 在月球上
- 在太空中
- 其他的地方

2. 写一个叫作"我将会需要的东西"的标题。在标题的下方，列出在你未来的世界中你想拥有的五件最重要的东西。

3. 在你未来的世界中你会有一个机器人。你想要哪种机器人？你可以从这些当中挑选一种：
- 家庭机器人
- 作业机器人
- 爱好机器人
- 运动机器人
- 教师机器人

你的机器人将能做什么？你的机器人应该具有什么特征？写下你的答案。

4. 想出至少三个你生活在未来世界的优点和缺点。然后填写下面的表格。

优点	缺点
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5

荣德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

B Tips for making your booklet

Writing

· Use a different page for each topic. Write the headings clearly at the top of each page.

☆ Page 1: Life in/on _____

☆ Page 2: Things I would need

☆ Page 3: My robot

☆ Page 4: Advantages and disadvantages

☆ Page 5: Map of _____

· Prepare an outline first. Then write the details.

Using pictures and photos

· Try to find some pictures that relate to your writing in newspapers or magazines or on the Internet. Add them to your booklet.

· Draw a map of the area where you would like to live and put it on page 5 of your booklet.

· Design an attractive cover showing some of the topics you have written about in your booklet.

Putting your booklet together

· Before you write in your booklet, write a draft.

· Then check the draft carefully for grammar and spelling mistakes.

· Next, decide how you want to arrange the pictures for each section.

· Finally, copy the revised draft into your booklet.

Presentation

· Use all kinds of materials to make your booklet colourful and interesting.

· Use bright colours for your drawings and writing. You can also use a computer to help you set the text and the pictures.

B 制作小册子的提示

写作

· 每个话题使用不同的页面。 在每页的最上面清楚地写上标题。

☆ 第1页：在_____里/上生活

☆ 第2页：我需要的物品

☆ 第3页：我的机器人

☆ 第4页：优点和缺点

☆ 第5页：_____的地图

· 先准备一个提纲。 然后写出细节。

用图片和照片

· 尽量在报纸、杂志或因特网上找一些与你的写作有关的图片。 把它们添加在你的小册子中。

· 画一幅你想要居住的地方的地图，并把它放在你小册子的第5页。

· 设计一个有吸引力的封面来展示一些你在小册子里所写到的主题。

把你的小册子整理在一起

· 在你写小册子之前，先打草稿。

· 然后仔细检查草稿中的语法和拼写错误。

· 下一步，决定你想怎样为每部分安排图片。

· 最后，把修改后的草稿抄入小册子中。

展示

· 选用各种材料使你的小册子丰富多彩又有趣。

· 用明亮的颜色绘画和写作。 你也可以用电脑帮助你设置文本与图片。

英德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 过关测试

(答案见135页)

限时:60分钟　满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	总分
得分							

请通过 www.rudder.com.cn 下载或加QQ 获取听力原题、听力材料、答案及录音

一、单项选择(每小题1分,共15分)

1. —Mum, _____ of my classmates _____ glasses.
—Oh, my God. You need to protect your eyes well.
A. three-fourths; wears
B. three-fourth; wear
C. three-fourth; wears
D. three-fourths; wear

2. —What a nice T-shirt! How much did you _____ for it?
—It _____ me twenty *yuan*.
A. pay; cost　B. pay; paid
C. cost; paid　D. cost; cost

3. The stone is so big that it _____ too much room.
A. takes on　B. takes out
C. takes up　D. takes off

4. The shop in Baolong Square _____ for six years, but I _____ there so far.
A. has opened; haven't gone
B. has been open; haven't been
C. has been open; haven't gone
D. has opened; haven't been

5. Professor Tu Youyou never stops doing research on Chinese medicine, _____?
A. is she　B. does she
C. isn't she　D. doesn't she

6. —Is there _____ in today's newspaper?
—Yes, quite a lot.
A. anything interesting
B. something interesting
C. interesting anything
D. interesting something

7. There are fifty students in Class One. Twenty of them are boys; _____ are girls.
A. the other　B. the others
C. others　D. another

8. —It is said that the TV program *The Reader* was quite popular.
—Yes. I watched _____ at eight every Saturday.
A. it　B. them
C. that　D. those

9. Over 10,000 runners joined a half and a mini marathons in Xianlin, Nanjing _____ May 7, 2017.
A. in　B. on　C. at　D. by

10. —We did well in the test.
—Exactly. Nine _____ the students have passed the test.
A. hundred　B. hundred of
C. hundreds　D. hundreds of

11. Parents often _____ their children _____ some good living conditions.
A. offer; to
B. provide; for
C. provide; with
D. offer; of

12. —What's wrong with you, Eric? You look tired.
—I _____ to prepare for the final exam last night.
A. picked up
B. woke up
C. put up
D. stayed up

13. It's not always safe to pay over the Internet, _____ you should be careful.
A. so　B. after
C. because　D. as soon as

14. —Where was your dad at this time last night?
—He was talking with my uncle _____ I was looking for some information on the Internet.
A. after　B. until
C. since　D. while

15. —I'm told your class has 3 newcomers.
—Yes. One is a _____; the other two are _____.
A. Japan; Germany
B. Japanese; German
C. Japanese; Germans
D. Japanese; Germen

二、完形填空(每小题1分,共15分)

Suppose you find a bright yellow bike on a street corner in the city. You hop on(跨上)it and _____[16]. But wait—isn't this stealing? No, it isn't. _____[17] shouts, "Stop! Thief!" That is _____[18] this free ride is just fine with the city.

You _____[19] find hundreds of free yellow bikes in some US cities. The idea began in Portland, Oregon, in 1994. People saw a need for _____[20] transportation, and they wanted to help _____[21] pollution. So, to get citizens(市民) _____[22] their cars and onto pollution-free bikes, they _____[23] the Yellow Bike Project.

The _____[24] bikes are painted bright yellow and placed throughout the city. People can hop on the yellow bike and ride to run errands(短程差事), to work _____[25] to school. Then, they leave the bike for the _____[26] rider. There have been times when bikes have been stolen, but most people _____[27] the rules, because they think it is not wise to _____[28] the bike that's already free.

Portland's _____[29] was quickly loved by a lot of people. Within two years of its start, similar programs were _____[30] in cities in six other states.

16. A. drive away　B. ride away
C. ride back　D. run away
17. A. No one　B. Someone
C. Anyone　D. Everyone
18. A. whether　B. so
C. because　D. though
19. A. have to　B. don't have to
C. can't　D. can
20. A. expensive　B. crowded
C. free　D. common
21. A. protect　B. control
C. make　D. bring
22. A. out of　B. into
C. up　D. near
23. A. ended　B. started
C. changed　D. refused
24. A. public　B. private
C. clean　D. dirty
25. A. but　B. as
C. until　D. or

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

26. A. next　　B. last
C. best　　D. first
27. A. break　　B. make
C. discuss　　D. follow
28. A. buy　　B. repair
C. produce　　D. steal
29. A. citizen　　B. street
C. idea　　D. school
30. A. looked up　　B. made up
C. put up　　D. set up

三、阅读理解(每小题 3 分,共 15 分)

Famous Museums

Name	The Palace Museum	British Museum	Metropolitan Museum of Art
Country	China	The UK	The USA
Address	Chang'an Street, Beijing	New Oxford Street, London	Manhattan New York
Feature	The largest ancient palace buildings with many kinds of collections in China	One of the largest museums with collections of any time and any area in the world	America's largest art museum
Ticket	¥60 (Spring & Summer) ¥40 (Autumn & Winter)	Free	Free

31. As one of the largest museums in the world, British Museum is in _____.
A. Beijing　　B. London
C. New York　　D. the USA

32. Metropolitan Museum of Art is America's largest _____ museum.
A. nature　　B. art
C. history　　D. natural history

33. The Palace Museum which is in the center of Beijing, is also called "the Forbidden City(紫禁城)" in China. It lies in _____.
A. Chang'an Street
B. New Oxford Street
C. Beijing Street
D. Manhattan

34. If you visit the Palace Museum in July, how much money should you pay? _____.
A. ¥60　　B. For free
C. ¥40　　D. ¥100

35. Which of the following is TRUE according to the information above?
A. Each ticket for the Palace Museum costs the same in the whole year.
B. You don't have to pay for tickets if you visit Metropolitan Museum of Art.
C. British Museum lies in Manhattan, London.
D. The Palace Museum is the largest museum in the world.

四、词汇运用

A)根据汉语提示写出单词(每小题 1 分,共 5 分)

36. As science _____ (技术) is changing fast, we need to keep studying.
37. Westerners eat with forks and knives, while we Chinese eat with _____ (筷子).
38. President Xi met Bill Gates on March 28 and they exchanged views on improving public health _____ (服务).
39. I found it _____(累人的)to work at night.
40. We are walking _____ (穿过) the forest.

B)用所给词的适当形式填空(每小题 1 分,共 5 分)

41. Most of us are strongly against _____ (lie) to such a little child, though he is seriously sick.
42. The TV series *In the Name of People* has become popular among _____(hundred) of people since it was shown in March.
43. Every Monday morning, all the students and teachers watch the _____ (raise) of the national flag on the playground.
44. —Didn't you see the sign "No Parking" on the left?
—Sorry, I didn't. But now I know parking _____ (not allow) here.
45. Red lanterns are often _____ (hang) along the streets before Spring Festival.

五、对话七选五(每小题 3 分,共 15 分)

根据对话内容,从方框内的选项中选出能填入空白处的最佳选项,其中有两个为多余选项。

Li Lei: Hey, Bruce. I'm going home this weekend.
Bruce: _____[46]
Li Lei: To celebrate the Mid-Autumn Festival.
Bruce: _____[47]
Li Lei: It is an important time for family.
Bruce: _____[48]
Li Lei: We'll have dinner together, watch the moon and eat mooncakes.
Bruce: Mooncakes? Are they delicious?
Li Lei: Yes. _____[49] We can celebrate it together.
Bruce: _____[50] Thank you!
Li Lei: You are welcome.

A. Well done!
B. For what?
C. That's great.
D. What kind of festival is it?
E. I have never tasted them.
F. How will you celebrate it?
G. Would you like to go with me?

六、书面表达(30 分)

假如你叫张明,你的外国朋友 John 发来邮件,请你介绍中国的传统节日。请根据内容提示及要求给他写一封 80—100 词的回信。

参考词汇:the Lantern Festival; *yuanxiao*; lantern shows; pray; the Mid-Autumn Festival; mooncakes; watch the moon; tell the story of Chang'e; celebrate harvest; get together

要求:

1. 描述 1 – 2 个节日,包括节日名称、时间、美食、活动方式及意义等;
2. 语言通顺,要点齐全,意思连贯,条理清楚,书写规范;
3. 文中不得出现真实的姓名和学校名称;
4. 文章开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear John,

Glad to receive your email. You asked me about festivals in China. Let me introduce some important ones to you.

_____

_____

Can you tell me something about the festivals in your country? I'm looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours,
Zhang Ming

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 过关测试

见P(答案见137页)

限时:60分钟　满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	总分
得分							

姓名　学号　班级　学校　密　封　线

一、单项选择(每小题1分,共15分)

1. *Dangal*(《摔跤吧!爸爸》), _____ Indian film, has become one of _____ most popular films in China.
A. a; /　　B. a; the
C. an; the　　D. /; the

2. —_____ fathers didn't come to the meeting. Why?
—Because they have gone to Beijing.
A. Jeff's and Amy's
B. Jeff and Amy
C. Jeff's and Amy
D. Jeff and Amy's

3. Overseas experience may help make our life _____. So why not try to study abroad?
A. usual　　B. useful
C. successful　　D. traditional

4. With the _____ of society, our environment is becoming worse and worse. So we should do what we can _____ our environment.
A. develop; protect
B. developing; to protect
C. development; protect
D. development; to protect

5. The 24th Winter Olympic Games _____ in Beijing and Zhangjiakou in 2022, from February 4th to 20th.
A. is going to hold　　B. hold
C. will be held　　D. was held

6. The pressure group is _____ a ban on GM foods(转基因食品).
A. pushing for　　B. pushing out
C. pushing off　　D. pushing in

7. The car was out of _____ and hit a tree by the road.
A. danger　　B. breath
C. control　　D. practice

8. The New Silk Road will offer a good _____ for more nations to communicate.
A. chance　　B. habit
C. question　　D. price

9. We'll have to say goodbye, my dear friends! But I will _____ forget the days we spent together.
A. always　　B. often
C. never　　D. usually

10. —Hey, turn it off, please! We don't _____ music in the reading room.
—Oh, I'm sorry, sir. I won't do it again.
A. allow　　B. hear
C. enjoy　　D. like

11. The plane _____ by Wright Brothers.
A. invents　　B. invented
C. is invented　　D. was invented

12. Our government has tried many ways to _____ the smog(雾霾) problem. Maybe we'll have a clear sky in the near future.
A. put away　　B. work out
C. come up　　D. look for

13. I can't see anything in the room. Please help me _____ the lights.
A. turn on　　B. turn up
C. turn down　　D. turn off

14. Teenagers have to be 18 years old before they _____ to drive a car.
A. are allowed　　B. will allow
C. will be allowed　　D. allow

15. In the past few years, great changes _____ in Lianyungang.
A. take place
B. took place
C. have taken place
D. have been taken place

二、完形填空(每小题1.5分,共15分)

A long time ago, there lived a wise man named Zun-Nun in Egypt. A young man came to visit him and asked, "Teacher, why do you dress in _____[16] a way? Nowadays it's necessary to dress neatly(整洁地), isn't it? Or how will people know you're really a _____[17] and wise man?"

Zun-Nun smiled, took a ring from his finger and said, "Young friend, I'll answer your questions, _____[18] first do one thing for me. Take this ring to the market. Can you sell it for one chip of gold?"

When the young man looked at Zun-Nun's dirty ring, he thought to _____[19], "How will I sell it at that price?"

He _____[20] the ring to the vegetable, meat and fish traders and others in the market. But _____[21] was willing to pay a chip of gold.

He returned and told this to Zun-Nun. Zun-Nun said, "Now go to the gold shop and show the ring to the owner. Don't give a _____[22], and just see how much he will pay."

One hour _____[23], the young man was back. "Teacher, people in the market really didn't know the value of this ring. The gold shop owner _____[24] me 1,000 chips of gold."

Zun-Nun smiled. "That's the answer to your question, my friend. Someone can't be valued only from his _____[25]. The ring was a gift from the emperor," he said.

16. A. so　　B. such
C. this　　D. that
17. A. special　　B. strange
C. common　　D. stupid
18. A. until　　B. however
C. though　　D. but
19. A. him　　B. it
C. himself　　D. itself
20. A. gave　　B. showed
C. sold　　D. provided
21. A. nobody　　B. neither
C. anyone　　D. everyone
22. A. ring　　B. idea
C. price　　D. reason
23. A. after　　B. before
C. ago　　D. later
24. A. cost　　B. offered
C. spent　　D. lent
25. A. words　　B. thoughts
C. knowledge　　D. dress

三、阅读理解(每小题3分,共15分)

Pablo Picasso was born in Spain in 1881. His father was a painter and art teacher who gave his son the first lesson in drawing. He won a prize—"Science and Charity" for his first important painting when he was only fifteen. He studied in several cities in Spain. But there was no one to teach him all that he

荣德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

wanted to know. When he was nineteen, he visited Paris.

Paris was then the center of the world for artists. Everything that was new and exciting in the world of paintings seemed to happen there. When he was twenty-three, Picasso moved there to live and lived in France for the rest of his life.

When he was over ninety, this great painter still lived his life like a young man. He was still looking for new ideas and new ways to use his artistic materials.

When he died in 1973, he was ninety-one years old.

26. What did Pablo Picasso's father do?
A. A teacher.
B. A painter.
C. An artist.
D. A painter and art teacher.

27. What prize did he win when he was fifteen?
A. Science and Painting.
B. Science and Art.
C. Science and Charity.
D. Painting and Charity.

28. Where was he born and where did he visit when he was nineteen?
A. Paris and Spain.
B. London and Paris.
C. Spain and Paris.
D. London and Spain.

29. How old was he when he moved to Paris and how old was he when he died?
A. Twenty-three and ninety.
B. Twenty-three and ninety-one.
C. Nineteen and ninety-one.
D. Nineteen and ninety.

30. What did he do when he was old?
A. He lived his life like a young man.
B. He looked for new ideas.
C. He looked for new ways to use his artistic materials.
D. All the above.

四、词汇运用

A)根据汉语提示写出单词(每小题1分,共5分)

31. Today I am _____(骄傲) of our school, but I'm sure tomorrow I will be the pride of our school.
32. The _____(发展) of science has changed our world a lot.
33. She told me many _____(优势) of living in the city, but the living cost is quite high, as we know.
34. What difficulty will we have _____(控制) the new spacecraft?
35. Our school football team keeps _____(练习) playing football, so I am sure our players can win the match.

B)用所给词的适当形式填空(每小题1分,共5分)

36. Paper is one of the greatest _____(invent) in ancient China.
37. He _____(success) brought Chinese and Western music together.
38. The Belt and Road Forum(一带一路高峰论坛) _____(hold) successfully in Beijing.
39. Could you help the _____(Europe) write down their names on the list?
40. The athlete came first with a run of 9 seconds in the men's 100-metre race. He has become the _____(proud) of us Chinese.

五、短文填空(每空1.5分,共15分)

When Italian traveller Marco Polo came to Yangzhou in the 13th century, he recorded his amazing observations in his best-selling book *The Travels of Marco Polo*. For over 700 years, it n_____[41] went out of print. Hollywood Film-maker Chris Nebe follows in the footsteps of Marco Polo to explore China's mystery. He has c_____[42] twelve documentaries of *Mysterious China* series, including *Yangzhou: A City of Timeless Culture*. This 30-minute documentary takes a close look at the beauty and c_____[43] of Yangzhou.

To live, humans and all warm-blooded animals must have salt. In ancient times, salt was used as money and had the values as g_____[44]. Close to the seasalt-rich Yellow Sea, Yangzhou has been one of the r_____[45] cities in China because of its lively trade in salt, silk and grain. The surviving mansions and gardens of wealthy salt businessmen are witnesses of Yangzhou's great history. L_____[46] a beautiful necklace, Yangzhou Slender West Lake lovingly embraces(拥抱) the city. It has been a memorizing attraction for visitors from afar, showing the lasting s_____[47] of Yangzhou—peace and harmony(和谐).

The government has tried i_____[48] best to protect the Old Town of the 2500-year-old city. The area has become a great tourist attraction. At night, the streets turn into a mysterious land. Here delicious snacks and treasured souvenirs w_____[49] to be discovered.

The ancient art of Chinese handicrafts is celebrated in Yangzhou. Favourites among them are paper-cutting. Yangzhou's e_____[50] to continue the art form include China Paper-cutting Museum and tourists can enjoy masters' show on paper-cutting there.

Want to learn more? Why not watch the documentary in your spare time?

六、书面表达(30分)

马云是很多人心目中的偶像,他成功地创立了阿里巴巴,并且影响了人们的生活。请根据下表内容,结合马云的成长经历,用英语写一篇短文。

马云	年轻时过着艰难的生活;曾经做过许多临时的工作(a part-time job); 一直努力工作,永不言弃; 创建了阿里巴巴(Alibaba),改变了许多人的生活。	
你自己	你的梦想是什么?	……(至少写两句)
	如何实现自己的梦想?	……(至少写两句)

注意:1. 短文必须包含表中全部内容,不要逐字逐句翻译,应作适当发挥;
2. 词数:90左右。短文开头已给出,不计入总词数。

Everyone has a dream. The one who never gives up can achieve the goal. Ma Yun is a very good example. _____

荣德基
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 过关测试

限时:60 分钟　满分:100 分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	总分
得分							

一、单项选择(每小题 1 分,共 15 分)

1. I have failed three times. However, my father encourages me to have a fourth _____.
A. break　B. talk　C. try　D. rest

2. —May I take your _____?
—Yes, I want some milk and hamburgers.
A. food　B. order　C. seat　D. menu

3. My deskmate is really _____. She likes to attend different activities after school.
A. active　B. quiet　C. lazy　D. honest

4. Life can be hard _____, but you must keep your head held high and stay positive. Never let anyone bring you down.
A. at all times　B. all the time
C. at a time　D. at times

5. _____ riding shared bikes(共享单车) is an environmentally friendly way to travel, many of the bikes are thrown everywhere.
A. Although　B. As
C. Unless　D. Until

6. This pair of shoes is _____ expensive. Can we see _____?
A. much too; another pair
B. much too; the other one
C. too much; the other one
D. too much; the others

7. The air in Beijing is much worse than _____ in many other cities.
A. this　B. those　C. that　D. these

8. —Look! What a mess it is in your room!
—Sorry. I'll _____ my school things and tidy it up right now.
A. put up　B. put away
C. put out　D. put off

9. —Do you know _____ Ann goes to work every day?
—Usually by underground.
A. why　B. how　C. when　D. whether

10. Our government has tried many ways to _____ the haze(雾霾) problem. Maybe we'll have a clearer sky in the near future.
A. come up with　B. put away
C. set up　D. deal with

11. Bad luck! The film star had her leg _____ while playing a part in the film.
A. to break　B. breaking
C. break　D. broken

12. Take the paper with you. The details we ought to pay attention to _____ on it.
A. writing　B. being written
C. are written　D. have written

13. —Must I hand in my homework now?
—_____
A. Yes, you need.　B. No, you mustn't.
C. Yes, you have.　D. No, you needn't.

14. Since several years ago, many supermarkets in China have _____ free plastic bags.
A. to stop providing
B. to stop to offer
C. stopped to provide
D. stopped offering

15. I'd like to know _____.
A. when will he graduate from university
B. whether he will receive higher education
C. that he has been studying for 20 years
D. what subject is he good at

二、完形填空(每小题 1 分,共 15 分)

Telling the truth is a very good habit. Here is a story of a man who did lots of bad things, but his promise to tell the truth _____[16] him.

Once the man came to the prophet (先知) Muhammad and said, "Oh, the prophet of Allah, I have many _____[17] habits. Which one should I _____[18] first?" The prophet said, "Give up telling lies first and always tell the truth." The man promised to do so and went home.

At night the man planned to go out to steal. Before _____[19] home, he said to _____[20], "If tomorrow the prophet asks me _____[21] I have been, shall I say that I went out to steal? No, I _____[22] say that. But neither can I lie. If I tell the truth, everyone will call me a _____[23]." So the man _____[24] not to steal that night.

The next day, when he was about to _____[25] wine, he thought, "_____[26] shall I say to the prophet if he asks me what I did during the day? I cannot tell a lie, but if I tell the truth people will _____[27] me, because a Muslim (伊斯兰教信徒) is not _____[28] to drink wine." So he gave up the idea of drinking wine.

_____[29] this way, whenever the man thought of doing something bad, he _____[30] remembered his promise to tell the truth. Step by step, he gave up all his bad habits and became a good Muslim and a very good person.

16. A. killed　B. saved
C. reminded　D. developed
17. A. good　B. great　C. bad　D. daily
18. A. look after　B. care about
C. put off　D. give up
19. A. getting　B. leaving
C. arriving　D. returning
20. A. himself　B. herself
C. itself　D. themselves
21. A. where　B. how
C. when　D. which
22. A. needn't　B. shouldn't
C. can't　D. might not
23. A. chef　B. doctor
C. thief　D. member
24. A. continued　B. decided
C. refused　D. forgot
25. A. make　B. sell
C. store　D. drink
26. A. What　B. How
C. Which　D. When
27. A. love　B. teach
C. notice　D. hate
28. A. allowed　B. asked
C. invited　D. provided
29. A. By　B. On　C. In　D. As
30. A. hardly　B. always
C. never　D. sometimes

三、阅读理解(每小题 3 分,共 15 分)

Using iPads to Make Learning Fun

Paper, pencils, whiteboards, textbooks are the tools you need if you want to go to school. But recently, you can add another one to the list: an iPad.

Because the popular Apple tablet is not only useful for searching the Internet and watching videos, but it is also being used to make learning fun.

Scientists now know that we learn better when we are enjoying ourselves, so recently software developers have made iPad applications (应用程序) that look like video games, but have strong educational content. One of the best examples of this new form of

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

teaching application is Futaba, a game in which up to four children try to recognize a spinning(旋转的) object, and then identify what it is. The game can be used to teach English, math, foreign languages, or just about anything, and students love it. Teachers can even make their own questions. The important thing is that children enjoy the game, and don't even realize how much they are learning!

So the next time you have to choose between making your children study or letting them play a game, just remember—they could do both at the same time!

31. What can be added to the school thing list according to the passage?
A. An iPad.
B. An English textbook.
C. A pencil.
D. A whiteboard.

32. What does the underlined word "tablet" probably mean in Chinese in this passage?
A. 药片　　B. 掌上电脑
C. 牌匾　　D. 桌子

33. Futaba is _____.
A. an old kind of classroom
B. a new outdoor activity
C. a new educational application
D. a very old tool of teaching

34. How many children can take part in one Futaba game at a time?
A. 7.　　B. 6.　　C. 5.　　D. 4.

35. Which of the following is NOT TRUE according to the passage?
A. Scientists think that we learn better when we are enjoying ourselves.
B. Futaba can only be used to teach languages.
C. Teachers can make their own questions using Futaba.
D. The writer thinks children can study and have fun playing games at the same time.

四、词汇运用

A)根据汉语提示写出单词(每小题 1 分,共 5 分)

36. The_____(药) I take every day are on the table.
37. Would robots have _____(大脑) in the future?
38. His robot can't work _____(正确地). It doesn't talk.
39. Robots could do _____(一切事物) they're asked to.
40. Your room is in such a _____(混乱) that you'd better clean it up.

B)用所给单词的适当形式填空(每小题 1 分,共 5 分)

41. The bird _____ (spread) its wings and flew away.
42. —Oh, my God. I have to give up the difficult problem.
—Don't worry. I _____ (explain) it to you.
43. Look! The snow _____ (stop). Let's go outside to make a snowman.
44. The Apple Watch young people were looking forward to _____ (come) into the market at last.
45. I have to say that I _____ (complete) understand where Jerry is coming from.

五、任务型阅读(每小题 3 分,共 15 分)

Ever feel like no one really understands you? Well, "Pepper" could be about to change all that. Pepper is the first robot to read human feelings. Using its emotion recognition functions, Pepper can react to people when it is near them—making jokes, dancing and even singing in Japanese.

The man-like robot looks like a small girl. It is four feet tall with a tablet computer set to its chest. It has human-like hands, a girl-like body and a baby-like voice. It was shown to curious people in Tokyo stores on Friday by Softbank, a Japanese robotics company.

Pepper can examine facial expressions (面部表情), human voice and signs, and then make an answer. Pepper is designed to be a family robot, but it isn't like Rosie who can do housework on the cartoon *The Jetsons*. Pepper is used at home or stores, where we provide fun and entertainment.

Pepper gets power from love inside a family. Not only can he make jokes, make them laugh, it can also help people when they are in trouble. In a natural accident, it can help make those people who are sad or lonely feel relaxed, encourage them or make them laugh.

Pepper goes on sale in Japan for around US $2,000 in February 2015. For now, several Peppers are at Softbank stores in Tokyo for people to visit. The creators say before selling Peppers, they want the robots to store more knowledge, to do better in getting along with humans.

根据上面短文的内容回答问题(每题不超过 8 个单词)

46. What kind of robot is Pepper?
_____

47. Where was Pepper shown on Friday?
_____

48. What can Rosie probably do at home?
_____

49. How can Pepper help humans in a natural accident?
_____

50. When can people buy a Pepper?
_____

六、书面表达(30 分)

科技以人为本。随着时代的发展和科技的进步,机器人开始走入我们的生活。作为一名学生,你觉得自己需要一个机器人吗?下面是九年级五班学生做的一份调查报告,请用英语介绍调查的结果,并说说自己的看法。

	Students need robots	Students don't need robots
The percentage of students	30 %	15%
Reasons	1. 干许多家务活…… 2. 做危险的工作…… 3. 帮助学生做作业……	1. 价格高…… 2. 使人们更懒…… 3. 会出错……
Your opinion	…	…

注意事项:

1. 词数:100 左右;
2. 文中不能出现真实姓名、校名等信息;
3. 文章必须包含表格所提供的主要信息,并作适当发挥。

Our class made a survey on whether we need robots in our everyday life. Here is the result.

_____

_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 过关测试

☞(答案见142页)

限时:60分钟 满分:100分

题号	一	二	三	四	五	六	总分
得分							

姓名 学号 班级 学校 密 封 线

一、单项选择(每小题1分,共15分)

1. _____ of the students in our class _____ interested in microblogs (微博) on the Internet.
A. Two fifths; is B. Two fifths; are
C. Two five; is D. Two-five; are

2. _____ of them can work out the problem, so I have to turn to a third person for help.
A. None B. Either
C. Both D. Neither

3. —What rules do I have to keep while working here?
—_____, you must always wear your uniform.
A. By the way B. From then on
C. Believe it or not D. First of all

4. —Why not buy a second-hand flat first if you don't have enough money?
—That's a good _____.
A. saying B. question
C. suggestion D. decision

5. They have collected more than 14,000 books since the library _____ last month.
A. built B. was built
C. builds D. is built

6. —Could you go to the new movie with me now?
—Sorry, I _____. Look, it's time for me to watch *The Reader* on CCTV.
A. can't B. can
C. needn't D. must

7. —Hobo and Eddie _____ the cinema to watch the film*Dangal*.
—Oh, that's why I can't find them now.
A. have gone to B. have been to
C. has gone to D. has been to

8. The energy from the sun and wind is very cheap and it will never _____.
A. come out B. put out
C. carry out D. run out

9. We should encourage our students _____ hard instead of _____ too much time playing games.
A. work; spend B. to work; spend
C. work; spending D. to work; spending

10. —_____ number of cars on the road is growing too fast.
—I agree with you, and _____ number of problems have appeared already.
A. A; a B. The; the
C. The; a D. A; the

11. Nick has _____ money than Tony, but he has _____ friends in the class.
A. fewer; more B. more; less
C. less; more D. less; fewer

12. *Ode to Joy* (《欢乐颂》) is a TV play _____ many people like.
A. why B. that C. who D. whom

13. —The programme *Running Man* is quite popular around China. How do you like it?
—_____.
A. Pretty good B. All right
C. It's my pleasure D. I think so

14. Don't worry. There _____ enough water, vegetables and fruits in the fridge.
A. have B. are C. is D. be

15. —I haven't been to the science museum for a long time. What about you?
—_____. Could you go with me this weekend?
A. Me too B. Me neither
C. So have I D. So I have

二、完形填空(每小题1.5分,共15分)

Humans are mammals (哺乳动物). Most mammals are born able to do many things. Some can walk within a few minutes of being born. They have to be able to run away if _____[16] is near. But human babies are born _____[17]. They need the care of adults to live.

In the first month of life, babies cannot smile or sit up. They cannot even hold up their own heads _____[18] some help from grown-ups.

In the next few months, babies grow a lot. They learn to roll over, support their heads, and _____[19] sit up while being held.

Babies also have to learn to use their _____[20]. It takes months for them to learn to reach for objects. At around six months old many babies can _____[21] an object from one hand to another.

Babbling is _____[22] a human baby learns to speak. Babies all seem to make similar sounds by babbling. They try to imitate (模仿) the sounds they hear from adults. It will take about nine months _____[23] a baby can say real words.

Somewhere around a baby's first birthday he or she may stand or walk with help. Soon the baby will _____[24] around on his or her own!

The first year of a baby's life is a time of growing and _____[25]. Growing sure takes a lot of work!

16. A. food B. danger C. waste D. peace
17. A. careless B. harmless
C. hopeless D. helpless
18. A. of B. for C. without D. by
19. A. even B. never C. ever D. still
20. A. legs B. heads C. eyes D. hands
21. A. keep B. move C. hold D. make
22. A. why B. how C. which D. where
23. A. before B. since C. after D. while
24. A. look B. show C. run D. sit
25. A. speaking B. smiling
C. crying D. learning

三、阅读理解(每小题3分,共15分)

In the most southern part of our planet, there's a place that's covered with snow and ice all year round. But it has the clearest and cleanest air. Amazingly, in this place, the sun sometimes hangs even in the midnight sky. This place is Antarctica (南极洲); the coldest, windiest and harshest (恶劣的) place on the Earth.

As the world's least-known place, Antarctica is of great interest to scientists around the world. During 30 years, China has sent many scientists to Antarctica. They mostly look for the resources under the icy land and do research about climate change

荣德基

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

and marine（海洋的）biology.

Antarctica is a place with fantastic views. However, life there is very hard. Food is one of the biggest problems. Frozen food which can be heated easily is people's daily food. Fresh vegetables are hard to grow in the cold weather.

Sleep is also difficult. In Antarctica, summer lasts from November to March. During this period, Antarctica points to the sun and receives sunlight 24 hours a day. In order to get some sleep, scientists cover the windows with black plastic cloth to create "nights".

Working in Antarctica is dangerous, especially when meeting gale-force（七级以上的）winds. They can easily blow people away. So there are ropes that connect buildings with some research stations. People can hold these ropes to keep their balance in forceful winds.

What's more, communicating with others is difficult. Without cables and Internet in some research stations, two-way radios are the only tools to communicate. If people want to say hello to friends and relatives, they can use satellite phones.

Although it is challenging to work in Antarctica, scientists' passion to learn about this mysterious land will never end. It is hopeful that one day they will step every corner of this icy land.

26. From the passage, we learn that Antarctica _____.

A. is covered with water

B. rains heavily from time to time

C. has little wind most of the time

D. has sunshine during every night for 5 months

27. Scientists from China go to Antarctica to _____.

A. find out ways to control water pollution

B. research climate change and marine biology

C. grow plants and vegetables in special condition

D. stop the hunters from killing the marine life

28. In order to get some sleep in Antarctica, the scientists _____.

A. wear more clothes to keep warm

B. cover the windows with black plastic cloth

C. connect research stations with ropes

D. eat more fried and canned vegetables

29. We can replace（替换）the underlined word 'passion' in last paragraph with _____.

A. strong love

B. full preparation

C. pleasant introduction

D. amazing imagination

30. The passage is mainly about _____.

A. views of Antarctica

B. exploring(探索) Antarctica

C. how to survive in Antarctica

D. climate change of Antarctica

四、词汇运用

A)根据汉语提示写出单词(每小题 1 分，共 5 分)

31. The population has _____（增加）from 1.2 million to 1.8 million.

32. Luckily, neither the driver nor the _____（乘客）were hurt in the accident.

33. Look! Some fish are dead. The water in the river must be _____（污染）.

34. The red building was _____（专门地，特地）designed for disabled people.

35. Everyone knows that three _____（四分之三）of the earth is covered with water.

B)用所给单词的适当形式填空(每小题 1 分，共 5 分)

36. They've reached an _____（agree）on how to share the kitchen.

37. The food your mother cooks is _____（taste）than that my mother does.

38. Not only his parents but also he _____（prefer）to watch TV to spend their spare time when they lived in the country.

39. Tom is excited about the _____（possible）of playing for his school football team.

40. The chairs are _____（comfort）to sit on because they are too hard and cold.

五、短文填空(每空 1.5 分，共 15 分)

Everyone has his dreams of the future. But do you know w_____[41] future really is? I think future is now. That is to say, we m_____[42] treasure（珍惜）every minute and second.

There is an old English s_____[43], "Gain time, gain life." Then what is time? Time is something t_____[44] can't be seen or touched, but we feel it passing by. Time is always with us. We often say "Time is money", but it is more v_____[45]. Because when money is spent, we can earn it back. But if time is gone a_____[46], it will never return. That's why we say time is priceless.

Grasping the present is grasping the future. As students, we should work hard in o_____[47] to create a bright future of our own. We should m_____[48] the best use of every hour and be the master of today. We should do everything as well as p_____[49]. And never put off what can be done today till tomorrow.

Time and tide w_____[50] for no man. If you waste today, you will regret tomorrow.

六、书面表达(30 分)

针对大部分高中要求学生住校的现状，英语课上同学们就"Would you like to live in school dormitories？"这一话题展开调查。请你根据下表内容，用英语写一篇短文，汇报调查结果，表达你的意愿并阐述理由。

大部分学生	愿意	1. 方便与同学交流 2. 学会照顾自己
一些学生	不愿意	1. 在家能休息得更好 2. 与家人相处时间更长
你	……	……

注意：

1. 短文必须包括表中所有内容，可适当增加细节；

2. 你的理由至少两条；

3. 词数：100 左右；

4. 短文首句仅供选择使用，不计入总词数。

参考词汇：方便的 convenient　交流 communicate

短文首句：Would you like to live in school dormitories? We had a survey about it and here's the result. _____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

过关测试

▶Unit 1 过关测试

请通过 www.rudder.com.cn 下载
或加QQ获取听力材料及答案

一、1. D　**点拨**:考查分数和主谓一致。句意:——妈妈,我四分之三的同班同学都戴眼镜。——哦,天啊。你需要好好保护你的眼睛。分数的分子用基数词,分母用序数词,当分子大于1时分母用复数,故排除B、C两项;当分数作主语时,谓语动词的数与分数后的名词一致。classmates是可数名词复数,故选D。

2. A　**点拨**:考查动词的用法。句意:——多么漂亮的一件T恤衫呀!你花多少钱买的?——花了我20元钱。pay for sth. 意为"为某物付钱";sth. cost(s) sb. +钱则意为"某物花了某人多少钱";故选A。

3. C　**点拨**:考查动词短语辨析。句意:这块石头如此大以至于它占了太多空间。A. 呈现;B. 拿出;C. 拿起;开始从事;占据(时间,地方);D. 起飞;脱下;离开。结合句意可知选C。

4. B　**点拨**:本题用**语境法**解答。句意:——那家店在宝龙广场开业已经六年了,但到目前为止我还没去过。open在此处作形容词,开放的。have been to 去过;have gone to 去了。根据语境可知选B。

5. B　**点拨**:考查反意疑问句。句意:屠呦呦教授从未停止对中药的研究,是吗?因为never含有否定意味,故根据前否后肯的原则,反意部分应该是肯定,又因为前半部分的谓语动词是stops,所以选B。

6. A　**点拨**:考查形容词修饰不定代词的用法。该句型为there be结构的一般疑问句,故不定代词应该用anything,而形容词修饰不定代词应该后置,故选A。

7. B　**点拨**:考查不定代词。句意:一班有50个学生。20个是男生;剩下的是女生。the other意为(两者中)另外的一个;the others特指剩下的所有;others相当于other + 复数名词,表剩下的中的一部分;another表示(三者或三者以上)另一个。根据句意可知是指剩下的全部,故选B。

8. A　**点拨**:考查代词的用法。句意:——据说电视节目《朗读者》非常受欢迎。——是的。我每周六晚8点都会看它。用it指代上文提到的事物,故选A。

9. B　**点拨**:考查时间介词的辨析。在具体的某一天之前用介词on,故选B。

10. B　**点拨**:hundred前有明确数词时不加-s,nine hundred of 其中的九百,故选B。

11. C　**点拨**:offer sb. sth."为某人提供某物";provide sb. with sth."为某人提供某物"。

12. D　**点拨**:考查动词短语辨析。句意:——埃里克,你怎么啦?你看起来很累。——我昨天晚上熬夜为期末考试做准备了。pick up 意为"捡起,用车接";wake up 意为"醒来";put up"挂起,张贴";stay up"熬夜,不睡觉"。故选D。

13. A　**点拨**:考查结果状语从句。句意:网上支付不一定总是安全的,所以你应该小心。根据句意可知是前因后果的关系,所以选A。

14. D

15. C　**点拨**:考查名词复数的用法。句意:——别人告诉我你们班来了三名新同学。——是的,一名同学是日本人,另两名同学是德国人。Japan 意为"日本",指国家;Japanese 意为"日本人,日语";German 意为"德国人,德语",German在表示"德国人"时,是可数名词,其复数形式为Germans。故选C。

二、16. B　**点拨**:考查动词及语境的理解。A. drive away 开走;B. ride away 骑走;C. ride back 骑回来;D. run away 逃离。你跨上它,然后骑走。自行车是骑行的,结合句意,故选B。

17. A　**点拨**:本题用**联系上下文法**解答。考查代词及语境的理解。A. No one 没有人;B. Someone 某人;C. Anyone 任何人;D. Everyone 每个人。根据上文的否定回答,可知没有人大喊"停下来!小偷!"故选A。

18. C　**点拨**:考查连词及语境的理解。A. whether 是否;B. so 所以;C. because 因为;D. though 尽管。那是因为这种免费的骑乘恰恰适合这个城市。故选C。

19. D　**点拨**:考查情态动词及语境的理解。A. have to 不得不;B. don't have to 不必;C. can't 不能;D. can 能。在一些美国的城市你能找到成百上千的免费小黄车。根据后文这种想法在1994年美国的俄勒冈,波特兰开始,可知能找到小黄车。故选D。

20. C　**点拨**:考查形容词及语境的理解。A. expensive 昂贵的;B. crowded 拥挤的;C. free 免费的;D. common 普通的。根据上文小黄车是免费的,可以推测句意,人们看到了对免费交通的需求。故选C。

21. B　**点拨**:考查动词及语境的理解。A. protect 保护;B. control 控制;C. make 制造;D. bring 带来。他们想帮忙控制污染。结合句意,故选B。

22. A　**点拨**:考查介词及语境的理解。A. out of 自……离开;B. into 进入……;C. up 向上;D. near 附近。为了使市民离开他们的汽车并骑上无污染的自行车,他们开始了小黄车项目。结合句意,故选A。

23. B　**点拨**:考查动词及语境的理解。A. ended 结束;B. started 开始;C. changed 改变;D. refused拒绝。为了使市民离开他们的汽车并骑上无污染的自行车,他们开始了小黄车项目。结合句意,故选B。

24. A　**点拨**:考查形容词及语境的理解。A. public 公共的;B. private 私人的;C. clean 干净的;D. dirty 脏的。这些公共的自行车被漆上鲜亮的黄色并放置在全市。根据上下文可知这些自行车是公共设施,故选A。

25. D　**点拨**:考查连词及语境的理解。A. but 但是;B. as 因为;C. until 直到;D. or 或者。人们可以跨上黄车,骑着跑短程差事,上班或者上学。结合句意,故选D。

26. A　**点拨**:考查形容词及语境的理解。A. next 下一个;B. last 最后;C. best 最好的;D. first 首先,第一。然后,他们把自行车留给下一个自行车骑乘者。结合句意,故选A。

27. D　**点拨**:考查动词及语境的理解。A. break 打破;B. make 制造;C. discuss 讨论;D. follow 遵循,跟随。有自行车被盗的时候,但是大部分人遵守规则。根据后文的原因,故选D。

28. D　**点拨**:考查动词及语境的理解。A. buy 买;B. repair 修理;C. produce 生产;D. steal 偷。因为他们认为偷已经免费的自行车是不明智的。结合句意及上文,故选D。

29. C　**点拨**:考查名词及语境的理解。A. citizen 市民;B. street 街道;C. idea 主意;D. school 学校。很多人很快爱上了波特兰市的想法。根据句意,故选C。

30. D　**点拨**:考查动词及语境的理解。A. looked up 查阅;B. made up 组成;C. put up 举起;D. set up 建立。在它开始的两年内,相似的项目在其他六个洲的城市中建立起来。结合句意,故选D。

三、31. B　**点拨**:细节理解题。根据表格中"British Museum"一列中New Oxford Street, London 可知它在伦敦,所以选B。

32. B

33. A　**点拨**:细节理解题。根据表格中"The Palace Museum"一列中Chang'an Street 可知选A。

34. A　35. B

四、(A)　36. technology

37. chopsticks

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

38. service **39**. tiring
40. through
B） 41. lying
42. hundreds
43. raising
44. isn't allowed
45. hung
五、46～50：BDFGC
六、范文
Dear John,

Glad to receive your email. You asked me about festivals in China. Let me introduce some important ones to you.

First of all, I want to introduce the Lantern Festival. It comes in January or February. On that day, we eat *yuanxiao*, go to watch lantern shows and dragon dances to pray for health and happiness for the whole year.

The Mid-Autumn Festival is in the middle of autumn. It is a time for the family to get together and celebrate harvest. At night, the whole family eat delicious mooncakes and tell the story of Chang'e while watching the big bright moon.

Can you tell me something about the festivals in your country? I'm looking forward to hearing from you.

Yours,

Zhang Ming

点评：本文选取中国重要的2个传统节日进行介绍，包括名称、时间、美食、活动方式及意义等。

添彩点：这篇作文结构清晰完整，表达准确流利，要点齐全。文中有许多实用的表达方式：I want to…, It comes…, It is a time for…等。

▶Unit 2 过关测试

一、1. C **点拨**：考查冠词。第一空：一个印度的电影，表泛指，Indian 以元音音素开头，应用不定冠词 an；第二空：最受欢迎的电影，表最高级，用 the + 最高级。故选 C。

2. A **点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**解题。考查名词所有格。句意：—— _____父亲没有来开会。为什么？——因为他们已经去了北京。由句意可知 fathers 应为杰夫和埃米二人分别拥有的，所以应分别在两个人名后加 's，故选 A。

3. C **点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查形容词的用法。句意：海外经历可能会帮助使我们的生活成功，因此为什么不努力去国外学习呢？usual 平常的；useful 有用的；successful 成功的；traditional 传统的。故选 C。

4. D **点拨**：考查名词和非谓语动词。句意为：随着社会的发展，我们的环境变得越来越糟。因此，我们应该尽我们所能来保护我们的环境。develop 是动词，development 是名词，都是发展的意思，此处 the 后面加名词；to protect 是不定式表目的，其实 can 后面省略了 do，故选 D。

5. C **点拨**：本题用**句意理解法**解题。考查动词语态和时态。句意：第24届冬奥会将于2022年2月4号到20号在北京和张家口举办，冬奥会与举办之间是被动关系，且根据时间可以判断是一般将来时，所以选 C。

6. A **点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解答。push for 反复要求；push out 开除；push off 滚开；push in 插队。由句意"压力集团正强烈要求取缔转基因食品"可知答案。

7. C **点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查名词辨析。句意：汽车失去 _____ 撞到了路边的一棵树上。danger 危险；breath 呼吸；control 控制；practice 练习。结合句意可知选 C。

8. A **点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查名词词义辨析。句意：新丝绸之路将为更多国家提供交流的机会。chance 机会；habit 习惯；question 问题；price 价格。根据句意选择 A。

9. C **点拨**：考查频度副词。句意：我们得说再见了，我亲爱的朋友们！但我不会忘记我们在一起度过的日子。always 一直；often 经常；never 从来不，不会；usually 通常。根据句意可知不会忘记比较合理。

10. A **点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查动词词义辨析。句意为：——喂，请把它关掉。在阅览室我们不 _____ 音乐。——啊，对不起，先生。我不再那样做了。allow 允许；hear 听见；enjoy 喜欢；like 喜欢。根据前面的 turn off"关掉"，可知是不允许，故选 A。

11. D **点拨**：考查时态和语态。句意：飞机是莱特兄弟发明的。被动语态表示主语是动作的承受者，即行为动作的对象。被动语态由"be + 及物动词的过去分词"构成。发明飞机发生在过去，所以用一般过去时的被动语态，故选 D。

12. B **点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查动词短语辨析。句意为：我们的政府已经尽力 _____ 雾霾问题，我们可能在不久的将来就会拥有晴朗的天空。put away 放好；work out 解决；come up 升起，发生；look for 寻找。应该是解决雾霾问题，故选 B。

13. A **点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查动词词组辨析。句意：我看不见房间里的任何东西，请帮我打开灯。turn on 打开；turn up 调高，出现；turn down 调低，拒绝；turn off 关掉。故选 A。

14. A **点拨**：考查被动语态。句意：青少年要到18岁才会被允许开车。被允许 be allowed to。排除 B、D。在时间状语从句中要遵循主将从现的原则，排除 C。故选 A。

15. C **点拨**：考查时态及语态。句意：在过去的几年中，连云港发生了巨大的变化。由状语 In the past few years 可知本句要用现在完成时；take place 是不及物动词短语，不可以用于被动语态。故选 C。

二、16. B

17. A **点拨**：special 特别的；strange 奇怪的；common 普通的；stupid 愚蠢的。根据前文说他是埃及的一位智者，可知此处是说"否则人们如何知道你真的是一个特别、智慧的人呢？"

18. D **点拨**：根据前文"我可以回答你的问题"和后文"为我做一件事情"可知，此处表示转折。however 后边要用逗句隔开，所以选 D。

19. C

20. B **点拨**：give 给；show 展示；sell 卖；provide 提供。句意：他把戒指展示给市场中的菜农，肉贩，卖鱼的以及其他人。根据句意可知选展示。

21. A **点拨**：根据后文中这个年轻人说市场里的人都不知道这个戒指的价值可知，没有人愿意出钱买这个戒指。

22. C **23**. D

24. B **点拨**：cost 花费；offer 提供；spend 花费；lend 借。offer sb. + money 表示出价多少钱，所以选 B。

25. D **点拨**：word 话语；thought 想法；knowledge 知识；dress 衣服。句意：有些人不能只从他的衣服来衡量他的价值。故选 D。

三、26. D **点拨**：细节理解题。根据文章第一段 His father was a painter and art teacher who gave his son the first lesson in drawing. 可知选 D。

27. C **点拨**：细节理解题。根据文章第一段 He won a prize— "Science and Charity" for his first important painting when he was only fifteen. 可知选 C。

28. C **点拨**：细节理解题。根据文章第一段 Pablo Picasso was born in Spain in 1881. And When he was nineteen, he visited Paris. 可知选 C。

29. B **点拨**：细节理解题。根据文章第二段 When he was twenty-three, Picasso moved there to live and lived in France for the rest of his life. 和第四段 When he died in 1973, he was ninety-one years old. 可知选 B。

30. D **点拨**：细节理解题。根据文章第三段内容可知选 D。

四、A） 31. proud
32. development

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

33. advantages
34. controlling
35. practising
B） **36**. inventions
37. successfully
38. was held
39. Europeans
40. pride

五、**41**. never **42**. created
43. culture **44**. gold
45. richest **46**. Like
47. spirit(s) **48**. its
49. wait **50**. efforts

六、范文：

Everyone has a dream. The one who never gives up① can achieve the goal. Ma Yun is a very good example.

He lived a hard life when he was young and he used to② do many part-time jobs for a living. But he kept working② hard and never gave up②. Finally he created Alibaba successfully. Alibaba has changed a lot of people's lives.

I have my own dream, too. I want to be a teacher to help the children in poor areas. From now on②, I must work hard and improve myself. I will never give up my dream even if I face many difficulties. I'm sure my dream will come true②.

点评：本文运用了"三段论法"写"我最敬佩的名人"。1. 开篇点题(点出"我"钦佩的名人是马云)；2. 主体部分(介绍马云的详细内容)；3. 结论(写"我"钦佩马云，坚持梦想，永不放弃，"我"也会实现自己的梦想)。

添彩点：1. 运用了定语从句：who never gives up。

2. 运用了几个比较高级的短语：used to，keep doing sth.，give up，from now on 以及 come true。

▶Unit 3 **过关测试**

一、**1**. C **点拨**：考查名词的辨析。句意：我已经失败了三次。不过，我的爸爸鼓励我再尝试一次。表示"试一试"用 have a try。故选 C。

2. B **点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查名词辨析。句意：——请问你可以点菜了吗？——好的，我想要一些牛奶和汉堡。A. food 食物；B. order 命令，点菜；C. seat 座位；D. menu 菜单。根据句意及题干分析可知选 B。

3. A **点拨**：考查形容词的辨析。active 积极的；quite 安静的；lazy 懒惰的；honest 诚实的。由句意：我的同桌真的很活跃。她喜欢在放学后参加不同的活动。可知答案选 A。

4. D **点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查短语辨析。句意：生活可能有时是艰难的，但你必须坚持高高地抬起头，保持积极。绝不让任何人击垮你。at all times 总是，永远；all the time 一直；at a time 依次，逐一；at times 有时，间或。故选 D。

5. A **点拨**：本题用**句意理解法**解题。考查连词的辨析。句意：尽管共享单车是环保友好的旅行方式，很多自行车仍被扔得到处都是。根据句意选 A。

6. A **点拨**：句意：这双鞋太贵。我们可以看看另一双吗？too much 修饰不可数名词；much too 后接副词或形容词；another 指多数中的另一个；the other 特指两者中的另一者；the others特指其他的。故选 A。

7. C **点拨**：考查代词。句意：北京的空气比许多其他城市的空气糟糕得多。此题考查 that 代替不可数名词。根据句意，应选 C。

8. B **点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查动词短语辨析。句意：——看！你的房间是多么脏乱啊！——对不起，我马上把我的学习用品收起来并整理房间。put up 举起；put away 把……收起来；put out 扑灭；put off 推迟。故选 B。

9. B **点拨**：考查疑问词辨析。句意：——你知道安每天怎么上学吗？——通常乘地铁。why 为什么；how 怎样；when 什么时候；whether 是否。故选 B。

10. D **点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查动词短语辨析。句意：我们的政府已经尝试过许多方法来应对雾霾问题。也许我们会在不久的将来有一个更晴朗的天空。come up with 想出；put away 把……收起来；set up 建立；deal with 对付，处理。故选 D。

11. D **点拨**：本题用**固定搭配法**解题。考查非谓语动词。句意：真不幸！这个电影明星在参演这部电影时被摔断了腿。" have + sth.(宾语) + 过去分词(宾语补足语)"意为"让／叫／使／请别人做某事"。宾语 sth. 后面用过去分词作宾语补足语，说明 sth. 与过去分词表示的动作之间是被动关系。故选 D。

12. C **点拨**：本题用**句意理解法**解题。考查被动语态。句意：随身带上这张纸。我们应该注意的细节被写在它上面了。此题考查被动语态，根据句意，应选 C。

13. D **点拨**：考查情态动词 must 的用法。句意：——我必须现在交作业吗？——_____must 意为"必须"，must 开头的一般疑问句答语是 Yes，you must./No，you needn't.。故选 D。

14. D **点拨**：本题用**固定搭配法**解题。考查动词的用法。句意：自从几年以前，中国的许多超市已经停止提供免费的塑料袋。stop doing sth. 停止做某事，表示停止正在做的事情；stop to do sth. 停下来做某事，表示停止正在做的事情，做另一件事。根据句意，是停止正在做的事情，故选 D。

15. B **点拨**：考查宾语从句。句意：我想知道他是否会接受高等教育。宾语从句应该用陈述语序，排除 A，D，根据主句的意思，可知宾语从句是由疑问句转化而来。故选 B。

二、**16**. B **点拨**：考查动词。根据上文"did lots of bad things"可知但是他讲实话的承诺挽救了他。killed 杀死；saved 拯救；reminded 提醒；developed 发展。故选 B。

17. C **点拨**：考查形容词。根据下文中 Give up telling lies first 可知句意：我有许多坏习惯。good 好的；great 伟大的；bad 坏的；daily 日常的。故选 C。

18. D **点拨**：考查动词短语。根据下文中先知的话可知句意：我该先放弃哪一个呢？look after 照看；care about 关心；put off 推迟；give up 放弃。故选 D。

19. B **点拨**：考查动词。根据上文中 At night the man planned to go out to steal. 可知是在离开家之前……。getting 到达；leaving 离开；arriving 到达；returning 回去。故选 B。

20. A **点拨**：考查反身代词。根据文中 he said to _____，可知用 he 的反身代词。himself 他自己；herself 她自己；itself 它自己；themselves 他们自己。故选 A。

21. A **点拨**：考查疑问词辨析。根据文中 If tomorrow the prophet asks me _____ I have been，shall I say that I went out to steal? 可知句意：如果明天先知问我我去过哪里，我要说我出去偷了吗？where 哪里；how 怎样；when 什么时候；which 哪一个。故选 A。

22. C **点拨**：考查情态动词。根据文中 shall I say that I went out to steal? No，I _____ say that. 可知句意：不，我不能那样说。needn't 不需要；shouldn't 不应该；can't 不能；might not 可能不。故选 C。

23. C **点拨**：考查名词。根据上文中…I went out to steal…可知句意：如果我讲实话每个人都会叫我小偷。chef 厨师；doctor 医生；thief 贼，小偷；member 成员。故选 C。

24. B **点拨**：考查动词。根据文中 So the man _____ not to steal that night. 可知句意：所以那天晚上，那个人决定不去偷了。continued 继续；decided 决定；refused 拒绝；forgot 忘记。故选 B。

25. D **点拨**：考查动词。根据文中 The next day，when he was about to _____ wine，可知句意：第二天当他要去喝酒的时候。make 制造；sell 卖；store 存储；drink 喝。故选 D。

26. A **点拨**：考查疑问词。根据文中_____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

shall I say to the prophet if he asks me what I did during the day? 可知句意：如果先知问我白天我干了些什么我该跟他说什么呢？What 什么；How 怎么样；Which 哪一个；When 什么时候。故选 A。

27. D　**点拨**：考查动词。根据文中 if I tell the truth people will _____ me，可知句意：如果我说了实话人们将会讨厌我。love 爱，teach 教；notice 注意；hate 讨厌。故选 D。

28. A　**点拨**：考查动词。根据文中 because a Muslim（伊斯兰教信徒）is not _____ to drink wine. 可知句意：因为伊斯兰教信徒不被允许喝酒。allowed 允许；asked 问；invited邀请；provided 提供。故选 A。

29. C　**点拨**：考查介词。根据文中_____ this way 可知短语意为“以这种方式”。in this way 固定搭配，故选 C。

30. B　**点拨**：考查副词。根据文中 whenever the man thought of doing something bad, he _____ remembered his promise to tell the truth. 可知句意：每当这个人想做坏事的时候，他总是会想起他讲实话的承诺。hardly 几乎不；always 总是；never 从来不；sometimes 有时候。故选 B。

三、31. A　**点拨**：根据 But recently, you can add another one to the list：an iPad. 可知选 A。

32. B

33. C　**点拨**：根据 One of the best examples of this new form of teaching application is Futaba, a game in which up to four children try to recognize a spinning（旋转的）object, and then identify what it is. 可知选 C。

34. D　**点拨**：根据 One of the best examples of this new form of teaching application is Futaba, a game in which up to four children try to recognize a spinning（旋转的）object, and then identify what it is. 可知选 D。

35. B　**点拨**：根据 The game can be used to teach English, math, foreign languages, or just about anything, and students love it. Teachers can even make their own questions. 可知 B 错误。

四、A）36. pills　**37.** brains

38. properly　**39.** whatever

40. mess

B）41. spread

42. will/am going to explain

43. has stopped

44. came

45. completely

五、46. The first robot to read human feelings.

点拨：根据文中 Pepper is the first robot to read human feelings. 可知，Pepper 能够读懂人类的感情。故填 The first robot to read human feelings.

47. In Japan/ In Tokyo（stores）.

点拨：根据文中 It was shown to curious people in Tokyo stores on Friday by Softbank, a Japanese robotics company. 可知，在东京日本展出。故填 In Japan/ In Tokyo（stores）.

48. It can do housework.

点拨：根据文中 but it isn't like Rosie who can do housework on the cartoon *The Jetsons* 可知，Rosie 能做家务。故填 It can do housework.

49. By making them relaxed. /By encouraging them or making them laugh. / It can help make them feel relaxed./ It can encourage them/ make them laugh.

点拨：通读整篇短文可知，在自然灾害中，Pepper 靠鼓励他们，使他们放松或使他们笑来帮助人们。故填 By making them relaxed. / By encouraging them or making them laugh. / It can help make them feel relaxed. / It can encourage them/ make them laugh.

50. In February, 2015.　**点拨**：根据文中 Pepper goes on sale in Japan for around US $2,000 in February 2015. 可知，故填 In February, 2015.。

六、范文：

Our class made a survey on whether we need robots in our everyday life. Here is the result.

30% of the students need robots. They think robots can do a lot of housework and do many dangerous jobs. They can also help students do their homework. But 15% of the students don't need robots. They think the price of the robot is so high that they can't afford it. And robots can make people lazier. Robots sometimes go wrong, and they can stop working.

I think with the help of computers, robots and other high-tech devices, people will need to do less work. They will be relaxed.

点评：本文运用了“三段论法”写“调查报告”。1. 介绍（开篇点题，介绍这份调查报告的主要内容）；2. 主体部分（陈述两类看法的人各自的理由）；3. 结论（写我对拥有机器人的观点及看法）。

添彩点：1. 运用了一个重要的结构：make sb. ....

2. 运用了几个比较高级的短语：help sb. do sth.，go wrong，stop doing sth. 以及 with the help of....

▶Unit 4 过关测试

一、1. B　**点拨**：考查分数表达及主谓一致。英语中一般用基数词表示分数的分子，用序数词表示分数的分母。当分子是 1 时，分数的分母用单数形式，当分数的分子大于 1 时，分数的分母要用复数形式。分数修饰的主语后面谓语动词的数，和被修饰主语的单复数保持一致。句意：我们班五分之二的学生对网上的微博感兴趣。结合语境可知选 B。

2. D　**点拨**：考查辨析。句意：考查代词。句意：他们两个人都解不出那个难题，因此我不得不再请一个人来帮忙。A. 三者或以上都不；B. 两者中的任何一个；C. 两者都；D. 两者都不。根据句意，应选 D。

3. D　**点拨**：考查短语的辨析。句意：——当在这儿工作的时候，我必须遵守什么制度？——首先，你必须总是穿你的制服。A. By the way 顺便说一下；B. From then on 从那时候起；C. Believe it or not 信不信由你；D. First of all 首先。故选 D。

4. C　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查名词辨析。句意：——如果你没有足够的钱，为什么不先买个二手的套房呢？——那是一个好_____。saying 说法；question 问题；suggestion 建议；decision 决定。Why not ...? 用来提出建议，可知选项 C 符合题意。

5. B　**点拨**：句中的 last month 是一般过去时的标志，其次，图书馆和建造之间是被动关系。本题考查的是一般过去时的被动语态，其结构是：was/were + 过去分词。故选 B。

6. A　**点拨**：句意：——你可以现在和我一起去看新电影吗？——抱歉，我不能。看，现在是我看中央电视台的《朗读者》的时间。can't 不能；can 可以；needn't 不必；must 必须。根据句意可知是不能，故选 A。

7. A　**点拨**：考查主谓一致以及 have/ has gone to 与 have/ has been to 的区别。句意：——霍波和埃迪去电影院观看电影《摔跤吧！爸爸》了。——噢，这就是为什么我现在找不到他们。and 连接两个并列名词作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式，排除 C 和 D；have gone to 到某地去了（人现在不在这儿）；have been to 曾经去过某地（人现在不在那儿）。根据答语“我现在找不到他们”，可知他们现在不在这儿。故选 A。

8. D　**点拨**：本题用**固定短语法**解题。考查动词短语辨析。句意：来自太阳和风的能源很便宜，也将不会_____。come out 出版，开放；put out 扑灭；carry out 执行；run out 用尽。根据实际，太阳能，风能是用之不竭的。故选 D。

9. D　**点拨**：句意：我们应该鼓励我们的学生努力学习而不是花费大量的时间玩游戏。encourage sb. to do sth. 鼓舞某人做某事，instead of doing sth. 而不是做某事。故答案为 D。

10. C　**点拨**：句意：——道路上的汽车的数量增长得太快了。——我同意你的说法，大

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

量的问题已经出现了。此题考查固定短语 the number of…… 的数量，a number of 许多，根据句意，应选 C。

11. C　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**解题。句意：尼克比托尼有更少的钱，但是他在班上有更多的朋友。less 修饰不可数名词，fewer 修饰可数名词，more 可以修饰可数或不可数名词。friends 为可数名词复数，不能用 less 来修饰，排除 B；money 为不可数名词，不能用 fewer来修饰，排除 A；依据句意，答案为 C。

12. B　**点拨**：考查定语从句引导词。句意：《欢乐颂》是一部很多人都喜欢的电视剧。引导词在从句中作宾语且先行词 TV play 是物，故选 B。

13. A　**点拨**：考查交际用语。句意：《跑男》节目在中国很受欢迎。你认为它怎么样？A. Pretty good 非常好；B. All right 好吧；C. It's my pleasure 不用谢；D. I think so 我认为这样。结合句意可知选 A。

14. C　**点拨**：考查主谓一致。there be 句型符合“就近原则”。最近的是 water，所以用 is。故选 C。

15. B　**点拨**：句意：——我已经很长时间没有去科学博物馆了。你呢？——_____。这个周末你能和我一起去吗？Me too 我也是；Me neither 我也没有；So have I 我也是；So I have 我确实如此。根据第一句中“好久没有去科学博物馆了”以及最后一句可知答语应该是“我也没有”。故选 B。

二、16. B　**点拨**：food 食物；danger 危险；waste 废物；peace 和平。句意：如果附近有危险，它们可以逃跑。根据句意可知选 B。

17. D　**点拨**：careless 粗心的；harmless 无害的；hopeless 没有希望的；helpless 无助的。根据句意：但是婴儿生来是无助的，需要成年人的照料来生活。可知选 D。

18. C

19. A　**点拨**：句意：他们学着翻滚，撑起自己的头，甚至被人扶着的时候可以坐起来。坐起来相比于前边两个动作是递进的关系，所以选 even。

20. D　**点拨**：本题用**联系上下文法**解题。后文提到宝宝们要花费数月才能学着够东西，可知此处是说宝宝们也得学会用他们的手。

21. B　**22**. B

23. A　**点拨**：before 之前；since 自从；after 之后；while 当……的时候。句意：在宝宝会说话之前，要花费大概 9 个月。故选 A。

24. C　**25**. D

三、26. D　**点拨**：细节理解题。根据短文第一段 In the most southern part of our planet, there's a place that's covered with snow and ice all year round. 可知南极洲常年覆盖着冰雪，故排除 A；根据第五段中 Working in Antarctica is dangerous, especially when meeting gale-force（七级以上的）winds. 排除 C；根据第四段中 In Antarctica, summer lasts from November to March. During this period, Antarctica points to the sun and receives sunlight 24 hours a day. 可知南极洲一年有五个月阳光全天照耀。故选 D。

27. B　**点拨**：细节理解题。根据第二段 They mostly look for the resources under the icy land and do research about climate change and marine（海洋的）biology. 他们主要是寻找在冰冷的土地下的资源，做气候变化和海洋生物学的研究。故选 B。

28. B　**点拨**：细节理解题。根据第四段 In order to get some sleep, scientists cover the windows with black plastic cloth to create “nights”，可知为了睡眠，科学家们用黑色塑料布盖到窗户上以创造夜晚。故选 B。

29. A　**点拨**：细节理解题。根据最后一段 Although it is challenging to work in Antarctica, scientists' passion to learn about this mysterious land will never end.，可知虽然在南极洲工作是有挑战的，科学家们了解这块神秘土地的激情永远不会结束。

30. B　**点拨**：根据短文的主要内容，可知选 B。

四、A）31. increased

32. passengers

33. polluted

34. specially

35. fourths/quarters

B）36. agreement　**37**. tastier

38. preferred　**39**. possibility

40. uncomfortable

五、41. what　**42**. must

43. saying　**44**. that

45. valuable　**46**. away

47. order　**48**. make

49. possible　**50**. wait

六、范文：

Would you like to live in school dormitories? We had a survey about it and here's the result. Most students prefer to live in school dormitories because they find it convenient to communicate with their classmates. Also, they can learn how to look after themselves in this way.

However, some students think living at home is a better choice. The main reason is that they can relax better at home. Besides, they can spend more time with their family members and get on better with them.

As for me, I'd like to live in school dormitories. That's because I can spend more time on study. What's more, it's a wonderful experience to live with other classmates.

点评：本文运用了“优劣对比法”写“学生是否愿意住校”。1. 大部分学生愿意（方便与同学交流；学会照顾自己）；2. 一些学生不愿意（在家能休息得更好；与家人相处时间更长）。

添彩点：1. 运用了一个重要的句型：sb. prefer(s) to do sth.。

2. 几个高级短语 communicate with，in this way 以及 get on/along with 的运用体现了作者的写作功底。

随堂练习

Unit 1　Asia

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

一、1. tiring　**2**. suggestions　**3**. steps

4. chopsticks　**5**. rest

二、6. D

7. B　**点拨**：本题用**固定结构法**。考查固定搭配。had better 后面要跟动词原形。故选 B。

8. C　**点拨**：fly 与被修饰的名词 birds 之间为主动关系，应用 flying in the sky 现在分词短语作后置定语。故选 C。

9. B　**点拨**：本题用**题眼法**。考查形容词的比较等级。句意：李娜是世界上_____网球运动员之一。根据 one of 和 in the world 可判断用形容词的最高级，最高级前用定冠词 the。故选 B。

10. C　**点拨**：本题用**情景交际法**。考查交际用语。That's right 说得对；I'm afraid not 恐怕不行；You're welcome 不用谢；It's a good idea是个好主意。故选 C。

11. D

12. C　**点拨**：句意：将来，机器人将代替人做更多枯燥的工作，所以我们不会觉得枯燥。修饰物用 boring，修饰人用 bored。故选 C。

13. A　**14**. A

15. B　**点拨**：句意：——你介意我打开窗户吗？——最好不要，我感冒了。Never mind 没关系；You'd better not 最好不要；All right 好吧；With pleasure 乐意效劳。根据语境判断，选最好不要符合逻辑。

三、16. Since / As it's raining hard / heavily, you'd better not go out.

17. Why not/ Why don't you listen to others' advice before making the final decision?

18. The trip/journey is tiring but pleasant. 或 Although the trip is tiring, it is pleasant.

19. Since everyone is here, let's begin our class!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

20. Keep working hard and you'll make progress.

▶Period 2 Reading

一、**1**. middle **2**. shapes **3**. pointed

4. risen **5**. hanging

二、**6**. wonders **7**. is lying **8**. lies

9. reading **10**. eastern

三、**11**. C **点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**。考查非谓语动词。句意:请照看好这些从图书馆里借来的书。如果它们丢了,你必须要赔偿。borrowed 作 the library 在这里是过去分词短语作后置定语,表示从图书馆借的书。故选 C。

12. A **点拨**:本题用**辨析法**解题。考查动词辨析。——习家池在哪里?——它位于襄阳古城南 5 公里处。lie 躺,说谎,位于;live 居住;lay 产卵、放置;list 列出。根据"襄阳古城南 5 公里处"可知表示方位,此空应表示"位于"。故选 A。

13. B **点拨**:本题用**固定结构法**。考查非谓语动词。句意:《哈利·波特与火焰杯》值得一看。be worth doing 值得做。故答案为 B。

14. B **点拨**:be known as 作为……被人熟知。杭州作为丝绸之都被人所知,是一般现在时,故选 B。

15. C **点拨**:考查介词的用法。句意:在上海,越来越多的人选择乘坐地铁去上班。表示"乘坐地铁"用 by underground。故选 C。

16. C **点拨**:考查动词短语的辨析。句意:——你认识我们的新经理吗?——是的,他原来是我哥哥的一个朋友。turn up 调高;turn on 打开;turn out 结果是,原来是;turn off 关掉。故选 C。

17. A **点拨**:本题用**辨析法**。考查短语辨析。used to"过去常常",后跟动词原形;be used to"习惯于",后跟 n. -ing 形式。句意:Maria 过去常常看电视,但现在习惯于听音乐了。故选 A。

18. D **点拨**:put off doing sth.,推迟干某事;because 接从句,because of 后接名词、代词或动名词形式。故选 D。

19. A **点拨**:本题用**固定句型法**。句意:——据报道中国人每天_____40 多分钟读微信。——确实是。但是我认为微信占用了我们太多的时间。本题主语 Chinese 指人,所以 B、D 不对;又根据句式 sb. spend(s) some time doing sth.。故选 A。

20. D **点拨**:本题用**辨析法**。考查短语的辨析。cheer up 意为"(使)振作";pick up 意为"捡起";take up 意为"开始从事";set up 意为"建立"。句意:——"野生救援"这个组织成立的目的是为了保护野生动物。——到目前为止,它已经做了大量的工作。故选 D。

四、**21**. Can you fill the bag with the sand?

22. They can't go camping tomorrow because of the terrible/awful/bad weather.

23. is used to sleeping with the light on

24. on both sides/either side

25. Did he use to wear glasses?

五、**26**. successfully **27**. trade

28. ends **29**. across

30. because **31**. like

32. important **33**. shared

34. influenced **35**. places

▶Period 3 Grammar

一、**1**. left **2**. serve **3**. quarter

4. includes **5**. either

二、**6**. B **点拨**:本题用**固定短语法**。考查介词的用法。句意:当他还不出名的时候,他在一个酒吧里作歌手。be unknown to"不为……所知";serve as…表示"作为……服务"。故选 B。

7. C **点拨**:本题用**辨析法**。考查介词辨析。on"在……上面",cross 为动词,"穿过",排除 A 与 B 两项;across 表示"从一个平面上穿过";through 表示"从空间里穿过"。"过桥"指从桥的一端到达另一端,故选 C。

8. A **点拨**:while 与此同时;when 当……时候;unless 除非;as long as 只要。两个动作是同时发生的,所以应为"与此同时",故选 A。

9. C **点拨**:本题用**语境法**。句意为"你的英语学习进展怎样?""好多了。我感觉它不像以前那么_____。"interesting 有趣的;much 许多;difficult 困难的;easy 容易的。由 Much better 可知应是不像以前那么困难了。

10. A **点拨**:本题用**语境法**。考查动词辨析。句意:足球对孩子们来说是一项很棒的运动。它_____极好的锻炼,如跑和踢。provide 提供;remain 保留;practice 训练;receive 接收。由语境知,这里指足球提供了极好的锻炼。故选 A。

三、**11**. D **点拨**:本题用**排除法**和**逻辑推理法**解答。由 It takes sb. + 时间 + to do sth. 可排除 A 和 C;根据"走到这儿花了我们将近一个小时"可推测出是一定渴了,表示肯定推测用 must。故选 D。

12. A

13. B **点拨**:句意:我们发现我们不可能在短时间内学好物理。空格上为 find 的宾语,代替后面的不定式,四个选项中只有 it 有此用法。故选 B。

14. A **点拨**:句意:比尔认为与朋友们合作并分享不同的想法是必要的。本句由动词不定式"to work with friends and share different ideas"充当宾语,故缺少形式宾语 it,故选 A。

15. A **点拨**:句意:——他曾经几乎被淹死。——什么时候发生的?——那是 1998 年他上中学时。前者 that 指代以前的事,后者的 It 是指代时间。故选 A。

16. D **点拨**:句意:有人在按门铃。去看看是谁。表示不明身份的人用 it。宾语从句用陈述语序。故选 D。

17. B **点拨**:句意:迈克的母亲一直告诉他应该努力工作,但不起作用。it 指代上文提到的事。故选 B。

18. B **点拨**:本题用**语法判定法**解题。考查代词用法。句意:当我再次去我的家乡时,我发现它变化很大。用 it 指代 my hometown。

19. D

20. D **点拨**:句意:英语作为一门国际性的语言正在被接受,这是事实。it 是形式主语,that English is being accepted as an international language 是真正的主语。故选 D。

四、**21**. It is reported that

22. It seems that

23. It is about three kilometres

24. was turned into

25. It's amazing

▶Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

一、**1**. main **2**. states **3**. Japanese

4. stay **5**. dishonest

二、**6**. B **点拨**:考查冠词的用法。第一个空表泛指,且 71 是以辅音音素开头,故填 a;第二空在头衔前不用冠词,故选 B。

7. A **点拨**:本题用**排除法**。谓语动词是复数形式,而 B、C、D 都是就近原则,排除。故选 A。

8. C **点拨**:本题用**常识法**。句意:剑桥是英格兰东部的一个小城市。A. between 在……之间;B. with 和……一起,具有;C. in 在……里面;D. under 在 …… 下面。根据常识,Cambridge 在 England 内部,应用介词 in。故选 C。

9. D **点拨**:考查冠词。第一空:一个美国的女孩,泛指,且 American 以元音音素开头,用不定冠词 an;第二空:the United States 美国。故选 D。

10. B **点拨**:本题用**语境法**。other 其他的;another 另外一个;each 每一;every 每一。分析句意知,这里说的是"但是它是否会奏效是另外一回事",故选 B 符合语境。

11. B **点拨**:考查不定式作目的状语的用法。句意:世界野生动物基金会正在努力去拯救处于危险中的动物。努力的目的是去拯救动物,不定式作目的状语。故答案为 B。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

12. C **点拨**：考查介词，句意：——你知道他去世的准确日期吗？——不知道，但是我记得他是在一个寒冷的周五夜晚去世的。在具体某一天的早、中、晚，介词用 on。故选 C。

13. C **点拨**：本题用**辨析法**。考查动词短语辨析。句意：不要_____太晚，否则第二天你会感到疲劳的。wake up“醒来”；get up“起床”；stay up“熬夜”；show up“出现”。根据后半句“否则第二天你会感到疲劳的”可知选择 C 最为合适。

14. A **点拨**：本题用**题眼法**。考查数词的用法。hundred、thousand、million 等和具体数字连用，不加-s。该句中有具体数字 five，故选 A。

15. A **点拨**：本题用**排除法**。不定代词 something，anything 有形容词修饰时，该形容词要放在不定代词后面，排除 B 与 D 两项；something 一般用在肯定句中，anything 一般用在否定句和疑问句中，但在表示请求或希望得到肯定回答的疑问句中要用 something。Would you please…？表示请求别人帮助，应用 something。故选 A。

▶Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

一、1. India　2. Technology　3. population

4. finished　5. chosen

二、6. B　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**。考查主谓一致及被动语态。句意：——这个小男孩和他的同班同学们因为他们的勇敢行为而受到了表扬。——我认为我们应该向他们学习。此句是一个被动语态的句子，主语是 the boy，故答案为 B。

7. B　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**。考查比较级及主谓一致的用法。population 作主语看作单数；比较级 + and + 比较级，越来越……；人口的多少用 large、great 或 small 修饰，故选 B。

8. A　9. B

10. A　**点拨**：在具体的某一天之前用 on。句意：在 4 月 1 日那天中国宣布将在河北省建立雄安新区。

三、11. middle　12. as　13. biggest　14. flag　15. set　16. wonders　17. shapes　18. underground　19. praised　20. bike

Unit 2 Great people

Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

一、1. fighter　2. African　3. right　4. Russian　5. inventor

二、6. Children's　7. lives　8. writer　9. inventions　10. European

三、11. A　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查动词短语辨析。句意：——你曾经听说过彼得·柴可夫斯基吗？——是的，一位俄罗斯的古典音乐作曲家。hear of 听说；listen to 听……；listen up 注意听；hear from 收到……的来信。

12. D　**点拨**：考查冠词的用法。句意：克里斯托弗·哥伦布是一个来自欧洲国家的探险家。结合句意可知表示类别，explorer 以元音音素开头，European 以辅音音素开头，故选 D。

13. C　**点拨**：考查名词所有格的用法。句意：——_____哥哥是做什么的？——他是一名警察。由句意可知是两者共同拥有，故最后一个名词变成所有格，故选 C。

14. C　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查频度副词的用法。句意：——你曾经去过桂林吗？——没有，从来没有。我希望明年能去那里。always 总是，一直；sometimes 有时，偶尔；never 从不，从来不；often 经常。根据否定回答，及后文说打算明年去可知从来没有去过，故选 C。

15. B　**点拨**：考查动词的时态及语态。句意：篮球是一位叫詹姆斯·奈史密斯的加拿大医生发明的。主语 basketball 是谓语动词 invent 的承受者，用被动语态；发明篮球是过去发生的动作，用一般过去时态，故选 B。

▶Period 2 Reading

一、1. landed　2. beginning　3. received　4. test　5. joining

二、6. Father's　7. was waiting　8. pride　9. have controlled　10. to choose

三、11. C　**点拨**：考查非谓语动词。句意：在演讲大厅我们不允许吸烟。因此在这儿不允许你吸烟。allow doing sth. 允许做某事；sb. be allowed to do sth. 某人被允许做某事。

12. C　**点拨**：考查时态和语态。句意：十九道台州菜被选进了《淮扬菜》这本书。在四个选项中只有 C 项是被动语态，故选 C。

13. C　**点拨**：本题用**固定短语法**解题。考查介词的用法。句意：新年就要到了，在一年的开始我们应该制订计划。at the beginning of 意为“在……的开始”。故选 C。

14. B　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查形容词辨析。句意为：他赢得了这次故事演讲比赛，他父母非常_____。smart 聪明的；proud 自豪的；sorry 遗憾；upset 悲伤。分析句意可判断出：他父母都感到很自豪，故选 B。

15. D　**点拨**：本题用**固定句式法**解题。考查比较等级的用法。“The + 比较级，the + 比较级”表示“越……，就越……”。句意：继续前进，不要停止。你攀登得越高，就看得越远。

四、16. in order　17. to cut his speech short　18. manage to stop the car out of control　19. prevented/stopped/kept him from landing the spacecraft successfully　20. I have successfully worked out/solved that maths problem in many ways so far.

▶Period 3 Grammar

一、1. has gone　2. reading　3. does　4. was working on　5. winner's

二、6. B　**点拨**：考查动词时态。句意：他承诺他的团队将在这次比赛中赢得第一。根据 promised 可知宾语从句用过去将来时。故选 B。

7. A　**点拨**：考查非谓语动词。句意：林涛每天练习讲英语。practice 后面接动名词，故选 A。

8. A　**点拨**：考查动词短语辨析。句意：人生旅程布满荆棘，但是只要你细心和聪明，你就能_____你面临的任何问题。work out 解决；hand out 分发；find out 找到；put out 扑灭。此处是指解决你在生活中遇到的任何问题，故选 A。

9. D　**点拨**：考查动词短语辨析。句意：拿起你的笔，画出你自己的发明，或许有一天它会_____一种真的产品！A. 打开；B. 调低；C. 关闭；D. 变成。由句意可知是变成产品。故选 D。

10. C　**点拨**：考查形容词辨析。句意：这个苹果已经坏了，它发出了一股可怕的味道。good 意为“好的”；same 意为“相同的”；terrible 意为“糟糕的，可怕的”；delicious 意为“美味的，可口的”。根据上句描述可知味道不好闻，故选 C。

三、11. A　**点拨**：句意：夏洛克·福尔摩斯问嫌疑犯谋杀案发生时，他正在干什么。根据语境可知应用过去进行时。故选 A。

12. D　**点拨**：句意：——你有一辆漂亮的车。——谢谢。我买它不到一个月了。for less than one month 表示一段时间，故谓语动词用持续性动词且根据句意用现在完成时，故选 D。

13. B　**点拨**：句意：妈妈，有人正打电话过来，请您接一下电话。根据语境可知应用现在进行时。

14. C　**点拨**：句意：——你父亲是干什么的？——他是个医生，在当地一家医院工作。根据语境可知应用一般现在时。

15. C　**点拨**：句意：——喂，珍妮，咱们一起回家吧。——等一会儿，我正在发一封电子邮件。从句意可知，正在做某事，应用现在进行时。故选 C。

16. C　**点拨**：句意：——看蓝蓝的天空。雨

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

_____。——咱们出去散步吧。根据应答语可知说话时雨已经停了，用现在完成时态。故选 C。

17. D　**点拨**：句意：——琼在哪儿？——她正在她的书房读小说。由上文询问“琼在哪儿”可推出本句用现在进行时。故选 D。

18. C　**点拨**：句意：——你看起来焦虑，怎么啦？——昨天我去参加工作面试，我正在等待结果。由句意可知用现在进行时态。故选 C。

19. C　**点拨**：句意：上周我加入了读书俱乐部而且我已经读了两本书了。上周是过去的时间，所以前半句用一般过去时；而 already 往往和现在完成时连用，故选 C。

20. C　**点拨**：句意：——杰克，昨天下午 3 点你为什么没接我的电话？——噢，抱歉，我那时在_____一个音乐会。at that time 是指 at 3:00 yesterday afternoon，是过去进行时的时间状语，故选 C。

21. C　**点拨**：句意为：现在不要打扰艾伦。他_____*Spelling Bee* 比赛。根据时间状语 now 可知句子应该用现在进行时。故选 C。

22. D　**点拨**：句意：——你昨天看到汤姆了吗？——没有。我很长时间_____他了。A 项为一般过去时的否定形式；B 项为现在完成时的否定形式；C 项为一般过去时；D 项为现在完成时的否定形式。根据答语中的 No 很明显排除 C 项；又根据 for a long time 可知用现在完成时，且主语是第一人称，故用助动词 have。

23. C　**点拨**：句意：葆拉很高兴_____她丢失的手表。葆拉高兴是因为她已经找到了她丢失的手表，过去的动作对现在有影响，心情好。故选 C。

24. B　**点拨**：句意：我在收音机里听到一首新歌。我在音乐商店上上下下地寻找，但是我没有找到这首歌。分析语境知，过去“寻找”的动作对现在造成的影响是“没有找到”，应用现在完成时。

25. A　**点拨**：句意为：每天许多城市的人们都骑自行车上班。由 every day 可知，本句用一般现在时。故选 A。

四、26. is working on　**27.** hand in

28. turn off　**29.** goes bad

30. work out when humans will move to

五、31. Did; spread　**32.** isn't watching

33. had; since　**34.** Do; anywhere

35. hasn't finished

▶Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

一、1. discovery　**2.** unknown　**3.** married

4. scientist　**5.** widely

二、6. C　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查动词短语辨析。句意：中国梦是凝聚人心和推动国家快速发展的好办法。try out for 参加选拔；fit for 适合于；push for 推动；cheer for 为……欢呼。根据语境可知应选 C。

7. D　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查固定短语的用法。上句句意为：彭丽媛作为一名美丽且受欢迎的音乐家被中国人民所熟知。be known as 意思是“作为……被了解”；be proud of 意思是“为……感到骄傲”；be famous for 意思是“因……而著名”；be well-known to 意思是“被……熟知”。

8. B　**点拨**：考查动词的时态。句意：她结婚十年了，现在有个可爱的女儿。表示动作从过去持续到现在，并且还会持续下去要用现在完成时。“for ten years”是一段时间，要求动词必须是延续性动词或表状态的词，故选 B。

9. B　**点拨**：考查宾语从句引导词辨析。句意为：——你知道“一带一路”高峰论坛什么时候开始的吗？——2017 年 5 月 14 日。that 引导宾语从句无意义；when 何时；if 如果；where 在哪。根据答语可知是问时间，故选 B。

10. C　**点拨**：考查定语从句。句意：昨天是我的生日。我朋友送了我一张韩庚专辑的光盘。定语从句的先行词为 CD，故关系词用 which。

▶Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

一、1. development　**2.** increased

3. advantage　**4.** disadvantages

5. present

二、6. B　**点拨**：本题用**固定短语法**解题。考查介词和名词。句意：袁隆平一生致力于水稻的发展研究。devote… to 致力于……，the development of…… 的发展。根据句意可知选 B。

7. D　**点拨**：考查时态和语态。句意：更多的细节昨晚被添进计划中来确保它的实行。主语 details 和动词 add 之间是被动关系，且句中的时间状语为 yesterday night，故用一般过去时的被动语态，即 was/were + 动词的过去分词。

8. C　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查名词辨析。instruction 意为“说明”；instrument 意为“仪器”；advantage 意为“优点”；product 意为“产品”。句意：——骑自行车有很多的好处。——我同意。它环保而且省钱。

9. C　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查动词辨析。句意为：对每一个人来说，_____读书的好习惯是有必要的。enjoy 喜欢；choose 选择；develop 发展，养成；accept 接受。习惯是要逐渐养成的。

10. B　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**解题。句意：你永远不会猜到发生了什么事。宾语从句用陈述句语序，故选 B。

三、11. At present/At the moment

12. With the development of science

13. You have many advantages over your classmates

14. took place

15. happened to read

四、16. flight　**17.** student pilot's

18. served　**19.** managed

20. landed　**21.** step

22. heroes　**23.** presented

24. highest　**25.** service

Unit 3 Robots

▶Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit

一、1. explaining　**2.** post　**3.** brain

4. whatever　**5.** robots

二、6. C　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**解题。考查动词时态。句意：——我不知道明天是否会下雨。——好吧，如果下雨，校运动会将被取消。will rain 一般将来时；rains 一般现在时。根据回答中 if 引导的条件状语从句的时态“主将从现”，主句 will be canceled 可知从句要用一般现在时，排除 A 和 B；结合第一句，if 引导的宾语从句，tomorrow 可知要用一般将来时。故选 C。

7. D　**点拨**：本题用**排除法**解题。考查宾语从句。宾语从句要用陈述语序，排除 A、C。根据答语“大概又是在半夜”可知问的是什么时候停止工作，故选 D。

8. B　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查代词的辨析。句意：——昨天你找到你的英语字典了吗？——没有，我没有找到它。但是我已经从学校图书馆借了一本。it 指代上文出现的同一事物，one 指代上文出现的同类事物中的一个。故选 B。

9. B　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查动词短语辨析。句意：——你爸爸在哪里，海伦？——他正在浴室尝试_____一个新的淋浴器，put out 扑灭；put in 安装；put through 接通；put down 放下。由句意可知选 B。

10. B　**点拨**：本题用**排除法**解题。考查宾语从句。句意：——我想知道我们将去哪儿野营。——或许在森林里。宾语从句中用陈述语序，可排除 C、D；再根据答语可知是询问地点，排除 A。

11. C

12. C　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。句意：无论何时登山你必须穿上结实的鞋袜。whatever无论何事；wherever 无论何地；whenever 无论何时。故选 C。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

▶**Period 2 Reading**

一、**1**. paper　**2**. store　**3**. general

4. private　**5**. satisfies

二、**6**. properly　**7**. ends　**8**. spread

9. mistaken　**10**. completely

三、**11**. A　**点拨**：考查动词及副词辨析。句意：机器人感染了病毒，很是烦人。too much + 不可数名词，太多……，much too + 形容词，太……。根据句意，应选 A。

12. B　**点拨**：本题用**固定搭配法**解题。句意：昨天我们太累了以至于马上就睡着了。too… to 太……而不能……，后跟动词原形；在 so …that…句型中，so 后面加形容词或副词，that 后跟结果状语从句，其意为“如此……以至于……”，答案为 B。

13. B　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查名词辨析。句意：——托尼，你能把垃圾带出去并洗碗吗？——当然可以。我认为如果妈妈看到这_____会生气的。matter 事件，事情；mess 杂乱；trouble 麻烦；difficulty 困难。根据问句里的 rubbish 及句意可知杂乱符合题意，故选 B。

14. D　**点拨**：本题用**固定搭配法**解题。考查非谓语动词的用法。句意：你的机器人感染了病毒，它需要修理。need + doing 表被动或 need + to be done，所以此题选 D。

15. B　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查情态动词的用法。句意：——王小姐，我现在必须打扫房间吗？——不，你不必。你可以明天再打扫。Must I do…？否定回答用 No，you needn't. 。can 能；may 可以；must 必须，结合句意，故选 B。

16. D　**点拨**：本题用**固定搭配法**解题。句意：这个问题如此烦扰她以至于她不知道怎样处理。how to deal with it 怎样处理它。所以选 D。

四、**17**. It is too dark to see anything.

18. in need

19. Nobody likes the boy because he often tells lies.

20. In general，Amy is a hard-working student.

21. We are no longer children/We aren't children any longer. We can take good care of ourselves.

▶**Period 3 Grammar**

一、**1**. medical　**2**. thinking　**3**. herself

4. travelling　**5**. unsure

二、**6**. that，microwave is　**7**. that it's，learn

8. how to change　**9**. what to buy

10. which robot，buy　**11**. enough，get

12. in order to　**13**. in order to

14. As a result　**15**. where to stay

16. too difficult for me to answer

17. who to talk to

18. it impossible to finish

19. how to search the Internet

20. saw him go into that house

▶**Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills**

1. B　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。句意：表演非常令人兴奋，观众时而发出欢乐的呼喊声。every time 每一次；from time to time 时而；at all times 总是；at the same time 同时。由题意可知选 B。

2. D　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查动词短语的辨析。句意：如果顾客再次给我打电话，请将电话接通到销售部。run through 迅速传遍，快速阅读；look through 浏览；go through 仔细查看，详细研究；put through 接通（电话）。分析句意可知选 D。

3. A　**点拨**：本题用**固定搭配法**解题。考查非谓语动词。句意：我的 DVD 播放器出了故障。我会请人修理。have sth. done 请人做某事。故选 A。

4. C

5. A　**点拨**：本题用**情景交际法**解题。考查交际用语。句意：——你好，我可以和迈克通话吗？——_____Sorry，he isn't in. 对不起，他不在。Sure，here you are. 可以，给你。OK，who are you? 好的，你是谁？由情境可知选 A。

▶**Period 5 Task & Self-assessment**

一、**1**. products　**2**. regretting　**3**. has stopped

4. sold　**5**. happening

二、**6**. at most　**7**. up to standard

8. First of all

9. what's wrong/the matter with my computer

10. hearing from

三、**11**. ordered　**12**. smoothly　**13**. satisfied

14. needs　**15**. caught　**16**. properly

17. complete　**18**. laid　**19**. stored　**20**. private

Unit 4 Life on Mars

▶**Period 1 Comic strip & Welcome to the unit**

一、**1**. C　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查不定代词的用法。句意：——你更喜欢哪一个，游泳还是冲浪？——都不喜欢。我喜欢戴水肺潜水。A. Both 两者都；B. Either 两者中的任一个；C. Neither 两者都不；D. None 三者或三者以上都不。依据句意，答案为 C。

2. A　**点拨**：考查被动语态。句意：——中国饮食中的盐太多。——对。世界卫生组织说每人每天只需要 1.5 克盐。根据句意可知应用被动语态，时态为一般现在时态。所以选 A。

3. D　**点拨**：本题用**逻辑推理法**解题。句意：——你认为你的茶怎么样？——_____。A. 随便；B. 非常；C. 我不喜欢茶；D. 它尝起来很好。根据句意可推知 D 正确。

4. C　**点拨**：本题用**句意理解法**解题。考查形容词比较级的用法。句意：——玩电子游戏是浪费时间。——我十分赞同。有更有意义的事情可做。the most 最多的；the least 最少的；more 更多的；less 更少的。根据句意“有更有意义的事情可做”，可知答案。

5. A　**点拨**：句意：我一到桂林就给你打电话。A. 到达；B. 是及物动词，后面不用加介词；C. 作“到达”讲是不及物动词，后面要加介词再接表示地点的名词；D. 是不及物动词，后面要加介词，再接表示地点的名词。故选 A。

6. A

7. C　**点拨**：考查情景交际。句意：——好大的雨！它会持续很长一段时间吗？——我希望不会。我们明天要去杭州的西湖旅游。A. 一点也不；B. 当然不；C. 我希望不会；D. 我希望如此。根据句意，应选 C。

8. A　**点拨**：句意：——我真的喜欢这个乐队！——_____我已经得到了他们到目前为止的每一张 CD。A. 我也一样；B. 听起来不错；C. 我不同意；D. 我希望如此。根据“得到了他们的每一张 CD”可知“我”也很喜欢。故选 A。

9. C　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。考查连系动词的用法。句意：——3D 打印技术能够被用来在 24 小时内建造出一个房子。——它_____令人惊讶的。这是我第一次知道这个新闻。look 看上去；smell 闻起来；sound 听上去；taste 尝起来。把四个选项分别放到句中，可知表示“听起来”的 sound 符合语境。故选 C。

10. D　**点拨**：对 Must I …？句型的肯定回答用 Yes，you must. 否定回答用 No，you needn't/don't have to. 。故选 D。

▶**Period 2 Reading**

一、**1**. increase　**2**. Rapid　**3**. polluted

4. specially　**5**. planets

二、**6**. tastier　**7**. Compared　**8**. crowded

9. uncomfortable　**10**. to form

三、**11**. B　**点拨**：考查冠词的用法。句意：——自然灾害是危险的。——是的，那个地区发生了地震，死了许多人。不定冠词 + 单数名词表示某一类人或事物的一个，经常用在第一次提到某人或某物时。定冠词 + 名词特指某（些）人或某（些）事物。发生在那个地区的地震是特指，a number of 许多，固定词组，故选 B。

12. A　**点拨**：本题用**固定短语法**解题。考查介词。句意：火箭将以每小时 25000 英里的速度去火星。at a speed of 以一个……的速度。根据句意，应选 A。

荣德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

13. D　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**解题。考查分数的表达。句意：五分之三的学生下周打算参观那个工厂。在表达分数的时候，分子使用基数词，分母用序数词，分子大于 1，分母的序数词要变复数形式。故答案为 D。

14. B　**点拨**：考查一般将来时和形容词。句意：食物将不会像现在的食物一样美味。此题考查一般将来时和形容词，根据句意，应选 B。

15. B　**点拨**：句意：——布朗先生，你们的工厂有多少工人？——我们工厂的工人数是 200 多。the number of 表示“……的数量”，跟复数名词连用作主语时，谓语动词要用单数；a number of 表示“许多”，相当于 many，修饰可数名词复数。跟复数名词连用作主语时，谓语动词用复数。故答案为 B。

16. A　**点拨**：句意：当你把自己与别人比较时，你就失去了你自己的独特之处。compare 比较；communicate 交流；contact 联系；connect 连接。由句意“把自己与别人比较”知选 A。

17. C　**点拨**：考查主谓一致。句意：我们学校的图书馆里有许多书，并且书的数量正变得越来越多。a number of“许多”，相当于 many 与 a lot of，修饰可数名词复数；the number of“……的数目”，作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。第一个空是 there be 结构，其主语为 books，be 动词应用 are。故选 C。

18. C　**19.** C

20. C　**点拨**：句意：在瑞士像玻璃和塑料这样的东西都进行分类，然后循环使用。东西是被分类，用被动语态，主语是 things，是可数名词复数，be 动词应用 are。故选 C。

四、**21.** all over again　**22.** as well as

23. connect；to　**24.** in some ways

25. articles were written in the form of

▶Period 3 Grammar

一、**1.** sure　**2.** reminds　**3.** stranger

4. agreement　**5.** low　**6.** possibility

7. difference　**8.** circle

9. low　**10.** similar

二、**11.** C　**点拨**：考查代词的辨析及介词的用法。句意：火星上的生活在许多方面会比地球上的生活好。“在许多方面”，应该用介词 in。比较必须在同类之间进行，为了避免重复，前面出现的名词 life 在 than 后可以用 that 代替。故选 C。

12. C　**点拨**：ABD 选项放到题中应为宾语从句应用陈述语序，且 D 选项缺少代词，故排除；be sure of sth. 为固定搭配。所以选 C。

13. D　**点拨**：本题用**情景交际法**解题。考查情景交际。句意：——我认为我们应该让人们更经常地使用公共交通工具。——_____。A. Never mind 没关系。B. Not at all 别客气。C. Sorry 对不起。D. I agree 我同意。根据语境，可知选 D。

14. B　**点拨**：本题用**辨析法**解题。句意：世界上最好的礼物可能并不昂贵，但是必须充满爱。A. 干净的，B. 便宜的，C. 坏的，D. 精明的，“不是昂贵的”即：便宜的，选 B。

15. A　**点拨**：考查形容词辨析。句意：——你能分辨出这两幅图画之间的区别吗？——区别？噢，没有。它们看起来相当的_____。A. 相似的，B. 不同的，C. 奇怪的，D. 有趣的。故选 A。

三、**16.** because of his illness

17. of

18. with a book under his arm

19. in special boots

20. without your help

21. without a rest

22. because of much homework

23. about Tom's worry about the easy exam

24. with a sea view

25. in a black jacket

▶Period 4 Integrated skills & Study skills

一、**1.** D　**点拨**：考查形容词。句意：——你父亲从不网上购物。为什么如此？——他说网上物品更便宜，但实际上产品不是很好。much 后面要跟形容词比较级，首先排除 B 和 C 项，根据题意只有 D 项符合。

2. A　**点拨**：考查连词辨析。句意：Right 和 write（读音）听起来一样，_____它们并不是指同一事物。but 但是；if 如果；so 因此，所以；or 否则，或者。选项 A 符合题意。故选 A。

3. B　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**解题。考查定语从句引导词。句意：这是我参观过的最有趣的城市之一。who 指人；that，指人、物；which 指物；where 指地点。根据先行词 cities，被形容词最高级 the most interesting 修饰，又因为先行词是序数词、形容词最高级时，或先行词被序数词、形容词最高级修饰时，定语从句常只用 that 引导，可知选 B。

4. C　**点拨**：考查交际用语。句意：——哈里，下个月去上海迪士尼公园怎么样？——_____！我们在那会有很多的乐趣。Good luck 好运；Never mind 没关系；Sounds great 听起来好极了，用来表示赞同某人的建议；Certainly not 当然不行。根据答语“我们在那会有很多的乐趣”可知，Sounds great 用在此处最为恰当。故选 C。

5. A

二、**6.** the risk of meeting

7. is harmful to / does harm to

8. after all　**9.** missed　**10.** carry out

▶Period 5 Task & Self-assessment

一、**1.** B　**点拨**：本题用**语境法**解题。考查介词短语的辨析。句意：像 Daniel 这样安静的男孩宁愿呆在家什么都不做而不是出去。A. because of 由于……；B. instead of 代替，而不是；C. such as 例如；D. together with 和……一起。

2. B

3. D　**点拨**：本题用**固定搭配法**解题。句意：我的父亲在他二十多岁的时候更喜欢打篮球而不是唱歌。would rather do sth than do，宁愿做某事也不愿做；prefer doing to doing，与……相比更喜欢做……。结合句意及时态，可知选 D。

4. B　**点拨**：考查固定搭配。句意：男孩比起玩具娃娃更喜欢模型飞机，而女孩宁愿拥有玩具娃娃也不愿有模型飞机。prefer…to…比起……更喜欢……；would rather do…than do 宁愿做……也不做。所以选 B。

5. A　**点拨**：考查宾语从句的用法。句意：——刚才马克斯对你说什么了？——他问我_____。宾语从句要用陈述句语序，首先排除 B 项；主句是一般过去时态，宾语从句要用过去的某个时态，又排除 C 项；再根据句意可知选 A。

6. A　**点拨**：本题用**语法判定法**解题。考查反意疑问句。句意：我们现在必须完成工作，不是吗？反意疑问句遵守“前肯后否，前否后肯”原则，排除 C 和 D；陈述句谓语是 have to，对它的否定应用 don't，排除 B。故选 A。

7. D　**点拨**：考查时态及语态。句意：——李阿姨，照片上穿红色衣服的可爱的女孩是谁啊？——是我女儿。这张照片是在 10 年前拍的。根据时间状语 10 years ago 可知，要用一般过去时，故排除 B 和 C 项；本句主语 The picture 是动作 take 的承受者，要用被动语态，故答案为 D。

8. B　**点拨**：考查固定短语。句意：——你读过《简·爱》这本书吗？——读过。它是一本著名的书，确实值得_____。be worth doing sth. 固定短语，意为“值得做某事”。故选 B。

9. A　**点拨**：句意：这个节目那么有趣让大家反复大笑不止。make sb. do sth.，让某人做某事，故选 A。

10. B　**点拨**：本题用**题眼法**解题。考查比较级的用法。句意：我们都喜欢露西，因为她总是为别人着想比为自己着想_____。than 是比较级的标志；又根据上文“我们都喜欢露西”，much 修饰比较级，故答案选 B。

二、**11.** polluted　**12.** Mars　**13.** passengers

14. journey　**15.** speed　**16.** form　**17.** tasty

18. another　**19.** three-eighths　**20.** special

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

教材习题参考答案

Unit 1 Asia

►Welcome to the unit

A 1. dragon dance 2. Chinese opera
3. chopsticks 4. Chinese knot
5. Chinese paper-cutting 6. kung fu

►Reading

B1 1. b 2. e 3. d 4. f 5. c 6. a

B2 1. palace 2. dynastics 3. muscum
4. summer 5. raising 6. gather
7. wonders

B3 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. F

B4 Beijing
1. middle 2. art treasures
3. biggest 4. national flag
5. north-west 6. garden
7. 6000 kilometres 8. 2000 Guilin
9. Lijiang River 10. mountains
11. underground 12. (many) rocks
13. boat trip 14. countryside

►Grammar

A 1. the Summer Palace
2. the lake 3. The lake
4. we could not row a boat there
5. the 17-hole bridge
6. the lions are all different from each other
7. unknown person

B 1. It is 22 February today
2. It is about 1,300 kilometres
3. It was 5 a. m
4. It was only 2℃
5. it is very cold and dry in Beijing
6. It was sunny/a sunny day
7. It was noon
8. It is not far

C 1. it is easy 2. It is sunny
3. it 4. It is said 5. It is fun
6. it 7. it (is) comfortable
8. It is kind

►Integrated skills

A1 **Day 1**: take a tour of Tokyo, the capital city
Day 2: visit Mount Fuji, Japan's highest mountain
Day 3: visit Kyoto, an ancient city of culture
Day 4: leave Japan for another Asian country

A2 1. 9 a. m. 2. 25 February
3. Tokyo 4. noon
5. sights 6. shopping
7. National Museum
8. works of art 9. Mount Fuji
10. coach 11. skiing
12. culture 13. food

A3 1. at 9 a. m. 2. four days
3. Tokyo 4. sights
5. shopping
6. Tokyo National Museum
7. works of art 8. coach
9. Mount Fuji 10. highest
11. skiing 12. Kyoto
13. culture 14. food

►Study skills

1. b 2. c 3. a

►Task

B 1. India 2. South Asia
3. Pakistan 4. New Delhi
5. Hindi 6. English
7. second 8. one billion
9. wheat 10. steel
11. festivals 12. saris
13. Taj Mahal

Unit 2 Great people

►Welcome to the unit

A 1. inventor 2. explorer
3. writer 4. president
5. scientist 6. composer

B 1. d 2. f 3. a 4. c 5. b 6. e

►Reading

B1 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. b 5. c 6. a

B2 1. Ohio 2. first flight
3. pilot's licence 4. the navy
5. a test pilot 6. an astronaut
7. space 8. the Moon

B3 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F

B4 1. He became interested in flying when he took his first flight at the age of six.
2. He was 32 years old.
3. He successfully brought the spacecraft down into the western Pacific Ocean.
4. *Apollo* 11was the first spacecraft to land on the Moon.
5. They walked on the Moon for about two and a half hours.
6. It was one small step on the Moon's surface for Armstrong, but for mankind, it meant a great achievement in space technology.

►Grammar

A 1. will have 2. need
3. is shopping 4. shops
5. is searching 6. is visiting/will visit
7. is reading 8. is watching
9. want 10. go

B 1. was watching 2. won
3. was writing 4. sent
5. was practising 6. took
7. found 8. was reading
9. were playing 10. was talking
11. called 12. wasn't

C 1. have made 2. have changed
3. used 4. has solved 5. washed
6. was 7. took 8. have had
9. travelled 10. have made

►Integrated skills

A1 1. 1867 2. Warsaw 3. the youngest
4. science 5. music 6. 16 7. teacher
8. Paris 9. Mathematics 10. Physics
11. French 12. radium 13. Physics
14. traffic accident 15. 1906 16. Chemistry
17. 4 July 18. 67

A3 1. Poland 2. Paris, France
3. Mathematics 4. Physics
5. French 6. 1895
7. Nobel Prize for Physics
8. radium 9. 1911 10. 1906

►Study skills

1. Hi! → Dear Ms Rowing,
2. you'll→ you will
3. Believe it or not, →You may be surprised to know that
4. there's → there is
5. It's → It is
6. it's → it is
7. esp. → especially
8. you're→ you are
9. 78-yr-old →78-year-old
10. the Harry Potter series isn't his cup of tea→ that he is not interested in the Harry Potter series
11. doesn't→ does not
12. he's →he is
13. Love→ Yours sincerely
14. Kitty→ Kitty Zhang

►Task

B 1. 7 September 1930 2. teacher
3. hunger 4. advantages
5. new type 6. 20% more rice
7. the USA 8. rice production
9. Father of Hybrid Rice
10. better rice plants

荣德基

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

11. the problem of hunger

Unit 3 Robots

►Welcome to the unit

A 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. b

►Reading

B1 1. d 2. f 3. e 4. b 5. a 6. c

B2 Good points

1. relax 2. breakfast
3. iron 4. go shopping 5. tidy up
6. as good as new Bad points
1. a virus 2. wake me up
3. bed 4. rubbish bin
5. private papers
6. knocked things over

B3 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F
6. T 7. T 8. T 9. T 10. F

►Grammar

A 1. Every day, I notice (that) the robot is busy with all kinds of housework.
2. When I get up, I find (that) my breakfast is ready.
3. When I come back from work, I find (that) my flat is as good as new.
4. I consider (that) the robot is a great help in my daily life.
5. I feel (that) it is comfortable to live with a robot.

B 1. you have a poor memory and often forget when to take your pills
2. you are always unsure where to find your clothes
3. you often cannot decide which to choose at the supermarket
4. you often feel lonely because you do not know who to talk to

C 1. to lock the door last night
2. to remind me of this
3. to go up and down the stairs often
4. to buy me everything I needed
5. to have a better sleep

►Integrated skills

A1 1. robot show 2. Japan
3. town hall 4. 14 5. 22 6. 9 a. m.
7. 4;30 p. m. 8. ¥20
9. homework 10. five minutes
11. clear language 12. good
13. wrong 14. tired 15. every month
16. two months

A3 1. robot show 2. town hall
3. China, Japan and South Korea
4. help students with their homework
5. in five minutes
6. copy of *Robot* magazine
7. 12 8. ¥20 9. 9 a. m.

►Study skills

1. He already bought a robot.
2. This new robot comes in his favorite colors—red, blue and white.
3. The robot can help a lot in the yard.
4. When he goes traveling, the robot can help look after his mother.
5. It is a pity that the robot never goes to see a movie with him.

►Task

B 1. two months 2. 24 hours a day
3. to help me with my homework
4. every six months

Unit 4 Life on Mars

►Welcome to the unit

A 1. air tank 2. tent
3. dried food 4. space helmet
5. special boots 6. computer
7. power pack 8. sleeping bag

►Reading

B1 1. e 2. f 3. h 4. b 5. g 6. d
7. a 8. c

B2 1. f 2. c 3. d 4. b 5. e 6. a

B3 1. a 2. b 3. b 4. c 5. c 6. a
7. b 8. c

B4 1. It would be clean and have lots of space.
2. Spacecraft would travel at the speed of light.
3. There would not be enough water or oxygen.
4. Food would most probably be in the form of pills and would not be so tasty.
5. The gravity is only about three – eighths of that on the Earth.
6. People might live in houses with huge comfortable rooms.
7. People could have more time to relax.
8. Students would study at online schools with "e-teachers".

►Grammar

A 1. Neil Armstrong took his first flight at the age of six.
2. Yuri Gagarin became the first man to go into outer space when he was 27.
3. People might move to another planet in the future because of the rapid increase in the population on the Earth.
4. Without fresh food, meals will not be as tasty as they are today.
5. It would be funny to play football on Mars because the gravity is low.
6. If you do not wear special boots, you cannot walk on Mars.

B 1. of the distance between Mars and the Sun
2. about/with the possibility of living on Mars for humans in the future
3. about the problem of the low gravity on Mars
4. of the transport on Mars
5. about the number of people who would like to move to Mars
6. the differences between life on Mars and that on the Earth

C1 1. Mars is a planet with an environment similar to that of the Earth.
2. Astronauts in space suits and helmets might stay on Mars for hours.
3. It is difficult to breathe on a planet with air much thinner than that on the Earth.
4. On Mars there might be people with air tanks on their backs.

C2 1. because of the serious pollution on the Earth
2. about the interesting life on Mars
3. because the gravity is low
4. without football
5. with the same football fields as those on the Earth

►Integrated skills

A1 1. Schools in Sunshine Town
2. Friday
3. Sunshine TV
4. *Moving to Mars*
5. from 7;30 p. m. to 9 p. m.
6. 50%

A2 Advantages
1. interesting 2. online schools
3. space 4. fun Disadvantages
1. really safe 2. get ill 3. far away
4. water 5. dangerous

A3 1. *Moving to Mars*
2. Sunshine 3. Friday 4. 7;30 p. m.
5. survey 6. 50% 7. move away from
8. another planet 9. interesting
10. online schools 11. space 12. space
13. really safe 14. get ill 15. water
16. dangerous

►Study skills

Task

A 1. f 2. b 3. e 4. h 5. d
6. g 7. a 8. c

B 1. Planet Mars Bank 2. online
3. two moons 4. basketball games
5. shopping malls 6. space clothes
7. hard to find 8. comfortable
9. no air pollution 10. floats in the air

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料